DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 187 092 FL 011 106

TITLE Standard Chinese: A Modular Approach. Student Text. Module 3: Money; Module 4: Directions.
INSTITUTION Defense Language Inst., Monterey, Calif.
PUB DATE Aug 79
NOTE 218p.; For related documents, see FL 011 105-109.
AVAILABLE FROM Defense Language Institute, Foreign Language Center, Nonresident Instruction Division, Presidio of Monterey, CA 93940 ($3.70).
LANGUAGE English; Chinese

EDRS PRICE MF01/PC09 Plus Postage.
DESCRIPTORS *Chinese; *Chinese Culture; *Communicative Competence (Languages); *Conversational Language Courses; Cultural Education; Geographic Location; Monetary Systems; Speech Communication; *Standard Spoken Usage; Vocabulary Development

ABSTRACT

Texts in spoken Standard Chinese were developed to improve and update Chinese materials to reflect current usage in Beijing and Taipei. The focus is on communicating in practical situations, and the texts summarize and supplement tapes. The overall course is organized into 10 situational modules, student workbooks, and resource modules. This text covers the money and directions modules. The money module provides skill training needed to exchange money, make simple purchases, and discuss purchases in Chinese. A criterion test on biographic information must be passed before beginning this module. The directions module provides skill training needed to ask for and understand directions to any place indoors or outdoors, to give simple directions, to understand and give addresses, and to describe relative locations. The money criterion test must be passed as a prerequisite. Drills, reference lists, vocabulary, and notes accompany each of the 11 units of this text. (SW)

****
* Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made *
* from the original document. *
****

ED187092

STANDARD CHINESE

A MODULAR APPROACH

STUDENT TEXT

MODULE 3: MONEY
MODULE 4: DIRECTIONS

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS MATERIAL HAS BEEN GRANTED BY

DLI

TO THE EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)."

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION & WELFARE NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY

AUGUST 1979

FL011106

CM 0183 S

INQUIRIES CONCERNING THE USE OF THESE MATERIALS, INCLUDING REQUESTS FOR COPIES, SHOULD BE ADDRESSED TO

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE
FOREIGN LANGUAGE CENTER
NONRESIDENT INSTRUCTION DIVISION
PRESIDIO OF MONTEREY, CA 93940

TOPICS IN THE AREAS OF POLITICS, INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS, MORES, ETC., WHICH MAY BE CONSIDERED AS CONTROVERSIAL FROM SOME POINTS OF VIEW ARE SOMETIMES INCLUDED IN THESE MATERIALS, SINCE STUDENTS MAY FIND THEMSELVES IN POSITIONS WHERE CLEAR UNDERSTANDING OF CONVERSATIONS OR WRITTEN MATERIALS OF THIS NATURE WILL BE ESSENTIAL. THE PRESENCE OF CONTROVERSIAL STATEMENTS--WHETHER REAL OR APPARENT--IN THESE MATERIALS IS NOT TO BE CONSTRUED AS REPRESENTING THE OPINIONS OF THE WRITERS, OF THE DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE FOREIGN LANGUAGE CENTER, OF THE DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE, OR OF ANY OF THE AGENCIES WHICH SUPPORTED THIS EFFORT.

PREFACE

Standard Chinese: A Modular Approach originated in an interagency conference held at the Foreign Service Institute in August 1973 to address the need generally felt in the U.S. Government language training community for improving and updating Chinese materials to reflect current usage in Beijing and Taipei.

The conference resolved to develop materials which were flexible enough in form and content to meet the requirements of a wide range of government agencies and academic institutions.

A Project Board was established consisting of representatives of the Central Intelligence Agency Language Learning Center, the Defense Language Institute, the State Department's Foreign Service Institute, the Cryptologic School of the National Security Agency, and the U.S. Office of Education, later joined by the Canadian Forces Foreign Language School. The representatives have included Arthur T. McNeill, John Hopkins, and John Boag (CIA); Colonel John F. Elder III, Joseph C. Hutchinson, Ivy Gibian, and Major Bernard Muller-Thym (DLI); James R. Frith and John B. Ratliff III (FSI); Kazuo Shitama (NSA); Richard T. Thompson and Julia Petrov (OE); and Lieutenant Colonel George Kozoriz (CFFLS).

The Project Board set up the Chinese Core Curriculum Project in 1974 in space provided at the Foreign Service Institute. Each of the six U.S. and Canadian government agencies provided funds and other assistance.

Gerard P. Kok was appointed project coordinator, and a planning council was formed consisting of Mr. Kok, Frances Li of the Defense Language Institute, Patricia O'Connor of the University of Texas, Earl M. Rickerson of the Language Learning Center, and James Wrenn of Brown University. In the fall of 1977, Lucille A. Barale was appointed deputy project coordinator. David W. Dellinger of the Language Learning Center and Charles R. Sheehan of the Foreign Service Institute also served on the planning council and contributed material to the project. The planning council drew up the original overall design for the materials and met regularly to review their development.

Writers for the first half of the materials were John H. T. Harvey, Lucille A. Barale, and Roberta S. Barry, who worked in close cooperation with the planning council and with the Chinese staff of the Foreign Service Institute. Mr. Harvey developed the instructional formats of the comprehension and production self-study materials, and also designed the communication-based classroom activities and wrote the teacher's guides. Lucille A. Barale and Roberta S. Barry wrote the tape scripts and the student text. By 1978 Thomas E. Madden and Susan C. Pola had joined the staff. Led by Ms. Barale, they have worked as a team to produce the materials subsequent to Module 6.

All Chinese language material was prepared or selected by Chuan O. Chao, Ying-chih Chen, Hsiao-jung Chi, Eva Diao, Jan Hu, Tsung-mi Li, and Yunhui C. Yang, assisted for part of the time by Chieh-fang Ou Lee, Ying-ming Chen, and Joseph Yu Hsu Wang. Anna Affholder, Mei-li Chen, and Henry Khuo helped in the preparation of a preliminary corpus of dialogues.

Administrative assistance was provided at various times by Vincent Basciano, Lisa A. Bowden, Jill W. Ellis, Donna Fong, Renee T. C. Liang, Thomas E. Madden, Susan C. Pola, and Kathleen Strype.

The production of tape recordings was directed by Jose M. Ramirez of the Foreign Service Institute Recording Studio. The Chinese script was voiced by Ms. Chao, Ms. Chen, Mr. Chen, Ms. Diao, Ms. Hu, Mr. Khuo, Mr. Li , and Ms. Yang. The English script was read by Ms. Barale, Ms. Barry, Mr. Basciano, Ms. Ellis, Ms. Pola, and Ms. Strype.

The graphics were produced by John McClelland of the Foreign Service Institute Audio-Visual staff, under the general supervision of Joseph A. Sadote, Chief of Audio-Visual.

Standard Chinese: A Modular Approach was field-tested with the cooperation of Brown University; the Defense Language Institute, Foreign Language Center; the Foreign Service Institute; the Language Learning Center; the United States Air Force Academy; the University of Illinois; and the University of Virginia.

Colonel Samuel L. Stapleton and Colonel Thomas G. Foster, Commandants of the Defense Language Institute, Foreign Language Center, authorized the DLIFLC support necessary for preparation of this edition of the course materials. This support included coordination, graphic arts, editing, typing, proofreading, printing, and materials necessary to carry out these tasks.

James R. Frith

James R. Frith, Chairman
Chinese Core Curriculum Project Board

CONTENTS

Preface iii

MODULE 3: MONEY

Objectives 1

Target Lists 2

UNIT 1

Reference List 8
Vocabulary 10
Reference Notes 11
    Topic and comment
    Yes/no-choice questions
    Asking and giving prices
    The counters "volume," "copy," "sheet," "piece," "stick"
    Prices
Drills 19

UNIT 2

Reference List 26
Vocabulary 28
Reference Notes 29
    "Some," diǎn(r)
    Imperatives and polite imperatives
    Nominalized adjectival verbs (dàde, xiǎode)
    More on counters
    More on prices
Drills 35

UNIT 3

Reference List 40
Vocabulary 42
Reference Notes 43
    Reduplicated verbs (kànkan)
    "Or" questions with háishi
    Sentences with objects and dōu
    Adjectival verbs and comparison
    The marker ba for tentative statements and requests
    Colors
Vocabulary Booster (Colors) 50
Drills 51

UNIT 4

Reference List 57
Vocabulary 59
Reference Notes 60
    The plural counter -xie'
    Time words in topic position
    Completion le in sentences with counted objects
    Modifying phrases with de

Vocabulary Booster (Things in a Classroom) 66
Drills 67

UNIT 5

Reference List 75
Vocabulary 76
Reference Notes 77
    Money denominations
    The prepositional verb gěi
    More on the marker ne
    Focusing the question with shì bu shi
Drills 82

UNIT 6

Reference List 87
Vocabulary 89
Reference Notes 90
    Clock time
    Ba in questions
    Time-of-day words
Drills 96

MODULE 4: DIRECTIONS

Objectives 104

Map of Běijīng 105

Map of Taipei 106

Target Lists 107

UNIT 1

Reference List 113
Maps for C-1 Tape 115
Vocabulary 116
Reference Notes 117
    The prepositional verbs dào, "to"; cóng, "from";
      wàng, "towards"; and xiàng, "towards"
    Directions for "ahead," "left," and "right"
    Completion le in future contexts
    Zài meaning "then"
Drills 124

UNIT 2

Reference List 131
Maps for C-1 Tape 133
Vocabulary 134
Reference Notes 136
    The four directions
    Place words with -biānr
    Location words and the verbs shì, yǒu, and zài
    "Before" and "after"

Vocabulary Booster (Things in Nature) 146
Drills 148

UNIT 3

Reference List 156
Maps for C-1 Tape 158
Vocabulary 159
Reference Notes 161
    The prepositional verbs lí, "apart from," and cháo, "towards"
    Compound verbs of direction with lái and qù
    The marker -zhe
Drills 168

UNIT 4

Reference List 175
Vocabulary 177
Reference Notes 178
    The prepositional verb zuò, "by"
    Compound verbs of result
    Directions inside a building
Vocabulary Booster (Buildings and Institutions) 184
Drills 186

UNIT 5

Reference List 193
Maps for C-1 Tape 195
Vocabulary 196
Reference Notes 197
    Addresses
    Zài meaning "more," "again"
Drills 205

MODULE 3: MONEY

The Money Module (MON) will provide you with the skills needed to exchange money, make simple purchases, and discuss your purchases in Chinese.

Before starting this module, you must take and pass the BIO Criterion Test. Prerequisites to units 4 and 5 of this module are tapes 5 and 6, Numbers resource module and tapes 3 and 4, Time and Dates resource module.

The Criterion Test will focus largely on this module, but material from ORN, BIO, and associated resource modules may also be included.

OBJECTIVES

Upon successful completion of this module, the student should be able to

1. Comprehend the numbers 1 through 99,999, including those numbers used in money expressions, and say them in Chinese when given English equivalents.
2. Give the English equivalent for any Chinese sentence in the MON Target Lists.
3. Say any Chinese sentence in the MON Target Lists when cued with its English equivalent.
4. Give the Chinese names, when given the English, for fifteen items to be bought.
5. Say that he wants to make a purchase, find out if the item is sold, ask to see it, find out the price, ask to see other similar items, and either make the purchase or say he does not want to buy the item.
6. Talk in Chinese about the items he bought, the quantity he bought, the size and color of the items, and the price (cost) (including a comparison of his purchases with other items).
7. Ask for change (specific denominations).
8. Say he wants to change money into local currency, find out where to change it, ask what the current exchange rate is, and complete the exchange using cash or traveler's checks.

UNIT 1 TARGET LIST

1.	Wǒ xiǎng mǎi Yīngwén bào.	I would like to buy an English-language newspaper.
	Hǎo. Jiù zài zhèli.	Fine. They're right here.
2.	Zhège bào duōshao qián?	How much is this newspaper?
	Zhège bào wǔkuài qián yífèn.	This newspaper is five dollars a copy.
3.	Zhèli yǒu Měiguo zázhì meiyou?	Are there any American magazines here?
	Zhèli méiyou Měiguo zázhì.	There aren't any American magazines here.
4.	Nǐmen zhèli mài Měiguo shū bu mai?	Do you sell American books here?
	Duìbuqǐ, Měiguo shū wǒmen bú mài.	I'm sorry, we don't sell American books.
5.	Bào, zázhì, yígòng duōshao qián?	How much are the newspaper and magazine altogether?
	Yígòng sānshiwǔkuài qián.	Altogether, it's thirty-five dollars.
6.	Zhè liǎngzhāng dìtú duōshao qián?	How much are these two maps?
	Sānshièrkuài qián.	Thirty-two dollars.
7.	Zhège duōshao qián?	How much is this one?
	Sānshikuài qián yìběn.	Thirty dollars a copy.
	Hǎo, wǒ mǎi yìběn.	Fine, I'll buy one.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

8.	yífèn(r) bàozhǐ	one newspaper
9.	yìzhī bǐ	one pen
10.	yìzhāng zhǐ	one piece of paper
11.	yìběn zìdiǎn	one dictionary
12.	Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn	Chinese-English dictionary
13.	Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn	English-Chinese dictionary
14.	huàxué	chemistry
15.	shùxué	mathematics

UNIT 2 TARGET LIST

1.	Zhèige diănxin duōshao qián yìjīn?	How much is this kind of pastry per catty?
	Bāmáo qián yìjīn.	Eighty cents a catty.
	Qĭng ni gĕi wo liăngjīn.	Please give me two catties.
2.	Nín hái yào diănr shénme?	What else do you want?
	Wŏ bú yào shenme le.	I don't want anything else.
3.	Qìshuĭ duōshao qián yìpíng?	How much per bottle is the soda?
	Liăngmáo wŭ.	Twenty-five cents.
4.	Zhèi shi sānkuài qián.	Here's three dollars.
	Zhăo ni liùmáo wŭfēn qián.	Here's sixty-five cents (in) change.
	Xièxie. Zàijiàn.	Thank you. Good-bye.
5.	Nèige dà píngguŏ duōshao qián?	How much are those large apples?
	Dàde sìmáo wŭfēn qián yìjīn.	The large ones are forty-five cents a catty.
	Qĭng gĕi wo sānjīn nèige xiăode.	Please give me three catties of those small ones.
	Hăo. Sānjīn yíkuài líng wŭ.	Certainly. Three catties are $1.05.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

6.	júzi	oranges, tangerines
7.	píjiŭ	beer
8.	yíkuài féizào	one bar of soap
9.	zuò măimai	to do business
10.	dàren	adult
11.	xiăoháizi	child

UNIT 3 TARGET LIST

1.	Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan nèige huāpíng.	Please give me that vase to look at.
	Něige? Zhèige lánde háishi zhèige hóngde?	Which one? This blue one or this red one?
	Nèi liǎngge dōu gěi wo kànkan, hǎo ma?	Give me both of them to look at. All right?
2.	Zhèi liǎngge xuésheng, něige hǎo?	Which of these two students is better?
	Sīmǎ Xìn hǎo.	Sīmǎ Xìn is better.
3.	Nèige hóng huāpíng zhēn hǎokàn. Nín yǒu dà yìdiǎnrde ma?	That red vase is really beautiful. Do you have one a little larger?
	Yǒu. Nǐ kàn zhèige zěnmeyàng?	We do. What do you think of this one?
	Hěn hǎo. Hǎo, qǐng gěi wo liǎngge ba.	It's very nice. Okay, how about giving me two, please.
4.	Nèige lánde tài guì le. Wǒ yào hóngde. Hóngde piányi.	That blue one is too expensive. I want the red one. The red one is cheaper.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

5.	bái	to be white
6.	hēi	to be black
7.	huáng	to be yellow, to be brown
8.	lǜ	to be green
9.	jiù	to be old, to be used, to be worn
10.	xīn	to be new
11.	gāo	to be tall
12.	ǎi	to be short (of stature)
13.	gāoxìng	to be happy
14.	nánkàn	to be ugly
15.	yìbǎ yǔsǎn	one umbrella
16.	kàn	to read, to look at, to visit

UNIT 4 TARGET LIST

1.	Wǒmen jiālide dōngxi, yǒude dào le, yǒude hái méi dào.	Some of our household things have arrived, and some haven't arrived yet.
2.	Tāmen màide pánziwǎn, yǒude zhēn hǎokàn. Kěshi guì yìdiǎn.	Some of the dishes they sell are really beautiful. But they are a little expensive.
3.	Wǒ mǎide nàxie pánziwǎn dōu bú tài guì. Guìde wǒ méi mǎi.	All those dishes I bought were not too expensive. I didn't buy the expensive ones.
4.	Nín mǎi shénme le?	What did you buy?
	Wǒ mǎi pánziwǎn le.	I bought dishes.
5.	Nín mǎile duōshao pánziwǎn?	How many dishes did you buy?
	Wǒ mǎile shíge dà pánzi.	I bought ten large plates.
6.	Nǐde fànwǎn shi shénme yánsède?	What color are your rice bowls?
	Shi lánde.	They're blue ones.
	Wǒ yě xǐhuan lánde.	I like blue ones too.
7.	Nǐde zhège chábēi hěn hǎo. Shi zài shénme dìfang mǎide?	This teacup of yours is very nice. Where was it bought?
	Shi zài Dìyī Gōngsī mǎide.	It was bought at the First Company.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

8.	yíge bīngxiāng	one refrigerator
9.	yìzhāng dìtǎn	one rug
10.	yíge shūjiàzi	one bookcase
11.	yìbǎ yǐzi	one chair
12.	yìzhāng zhuōzi	one table

UNIT 5 TARGET LIST

1.	Máfan ni, wǒ zhèr yǒu yìbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng ni gěi wo huànhuan.	Sorry to bother you. I have one hundred U.S. dollars in traveler's checks here. Please change it for me.
2.	Nǐ yào zěnme huàn?	How do you want to change it?
	Qǐng ni gěi wo liǎngzhāng wǔkuàide ba.	How about giving me two fives, please.
3.	Nǐmen shōu Měijīn ma?	Do you accept U.S. currency?
	Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu Měijīn.	I'm sorry, we don't accept U.S. currency.
4.	Zhèr yǒu méiyou yínháng?	Is there a bank here?
	Yǒu. Yínháng jiù zài nàr.	There is. The bank is right over there.
5.	Qǐngwèn, shì bu shi zài zhèr huàn qián?	May I ask, is it here that I change money?
	Shì, shì zài zhèr huàn.	Yes, you change it here.
6.	Jīntiānde páijià shi duōshao?	What is today's exchange rate?
	Jīntiānde páijià shi yíkuài Měijīn huàn yíkuài jiǔmáo liù Rénmínbì.	Today's exchange rate is one U.S. dollar to one dollar and ninety-six cents in People's currency.
7.	Xièxie.	Thank you.
	Bú kèqi.	You're welcome.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

8.	yíge diànshàn	one electric fan
9.	yíge diànshì	one television
10.	yíge shōuyīnjī	one radio
11.	yíge zhōng	one clock
12.	yíge shǒubiǎo	one wristwatch

UNIT 6 TARGET LIST

1.	Nǐmen zhèli kéyi huàn Měijīn ma?	Can U.S. currency be changed here?
	Duìbuqǐ, bù kéyi. Nín děi zài Táiwān Yínháng huàn.	I'm sorry, that's not possible. You must change it at the Bank of Taiwan.
2.	Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén, jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?	What time does the bank open, and what time does it close?
	Jiǔdiǎn zhōng kāi mén, sāndiǎn bàn guān mén.	It opens at nine o'clock and closes at three-thirty.
3.	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì.	I want to change some money into Taiwan currency.
	Hǎo. Yíkuài Měijīn huàn sānshibākuài Táibì.	Certainly. One U.S. dollar is thirty-eight dollars in Taiwan currency.
4.	Qǐng ni děngyiděng. Wǒ jiù lái.	Please wait a moment. I'll be right back.
5.	Qǐng gěi wo diǎn xiǎo piàozi, xíng bu xíng?	Please give me some small bills. Would that be all right?
6.	Méi shenme.	It's nothing.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

7.	zǎochen (zǎochén)	early morning
8.	zǎoshang (zǎoshàng)	morning
9.	shàngwǔ (shàngwu)	forenoon, morning
10.	zhōngwǔ (zhōngwu)	noon
11.	xiàwǔ (xiàwu)	afternoon
12.	wǎnshang (wǎnshàng)	evening
13.	yèli	night
14.	bànyè	midnight
15.	jiàn	to meet
16.	mámahūhū	so-so, fair

UNIT 1

REFERENCE LIST

(in Taipei)

1.	A:	Zhèli yǒu Yīngwén bào ma?	Are there any English-language newspapers here?
	B:	Yǒu. Jiù zài nàli.	Yes. They're right over there.
2.	A:	Zhèli yǒu Yīngwén bào meiyou?	Are there any English-language newspapers here?
	B:	Yǒu. Jiù zài nàli.	Yes. They're right over there.
3.	A:	Wǒ xiǎng mǎi Yīngwén bào.	I would like to buy an English-language newspaper.
	B:	Hǎo. Jiù zài zhèli.	Fine. They're right here.
4.	A:	Zhège duōshao qián?	How much is this one?
	B:	Wǔkuài qián.	Five dollars.
5.	A:	Zhège Zhōngwén bào duōshao qián?	How much is the Chinese-language newspaper?
	B:	Sānkuài qián yífèn.	Three dollars a copy.
6.	A:	Nǐmen zhèli mài Měiguo zázhì bu mai?	Do you sell American magazines here?
	B:	Mài. Wǒmen zhèli mài.	Yes, we sell them here.
7.	A:	Zhège duōshao qián?	How much is this one?
	B:	Sānshikuài qián yìběn.	Thirty dollars a copy.
	A:	Hǎo, wǒ mǎi yìběn.	Fine, I'll buy one.
8.	A:	Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Měiguo shū meiyou?	Do you have any American books here?
	B:	Duìbuqǐ, Měiguo shū wǒmen bú mài.	I'm sorry, we don't sell American books here.
9.	A:	Bào, zázhì, yígòng duōshao qián?	How much are the newspaper and magazine altogether?
	B:	Bào wǔkuài, zázhì sānshikuài.	The newspaper is five dollars; the magazine is thirty dollars.
	B:	Yígòng sānshiwǔkuài qián.	Altogether, it's thirty-five dollars.

10.	A:	Nǐmen zhèli mài dìtú bu mai?	Do you sell maps here?
	B:	Mài. Zài nàli.	We do. They're over there.
11.	B:	Nín xiǎng mǎi shénme dìtú?	What kind of map would you like to buy?
	A:	Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìzhāng Táiběi dìtú.	I would like to buy a map of Taipei.
12.	A:	Zhèzhāng Táiběi dìtú duōshao qián?	How much is this map of Taipei?
	B:	Shíèrkuài qián.	Twelve dollars.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

13.	yífèn(r) bàozhǐ	one newspaper
14.	yìzhī bǐ	one pen
15.	yìzhāng zhǐ	one piece of paper
16.	yìběn zìdiǎn	one dictionary
17.	Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn	Chinese-English dictionary
18.	Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn	English-Chinese dictionary
19.	huàxué	chemistry
20.	shùxué	mathematics

VOCABULARY

bào (yífèn)	newspaper
bàozhĭ (yífèn)	newspaper
-bĕn	volume
bĭ (yìzhī)	pen
dìtú (yìzhāng)	map
duìbuqĭ	I'm sorry
duōshao	how much, how many
-fèn(r)	copy (counter for magazine or newspaper)
Hàn-Yīng zìdiăn	Chinese-English dictionary
huàxué	chemistry
jiù	right, exactly (with reference to space)
-kuài	dollar (in context)
măi	to buy
mài	to sell
qián	money
shū (yìbĕn)	book
shùxué	mathematics
xiăng	to want to
xiăngyixiăng	to think it over
yígòng	altogether
Yīng-Hàn zìdiăn	English-Chinese dictionary
zázhì (yìbĕn)	magazine
-zhāng	(counter for flat things--tables, paper, pictures, etc.)
zhĭ (yìzhāng)	paper
-zhī	(counter for straight, sticklike objects)
zìdiăn (yìbĕn)	dictionary

REFERENCE NOTES

1.	A: Zhèli yŏu Yīngwén bào ma?	Are there any English-language newspapers here?
	B: Yŏu. Jiù zài nàli.	Yes. They're right over there.

Notes on No. 1

Zhèli yŏu: The Chinese verb yŏu sometimes means "to have" and sometimes means "to be" in the sense of "to exist." In exchange 1, yŏu has the latter meaning. With this meaning, it often translates into English as "there is/are."

Topic-comment sentences: The subject of a Chinese sentence need not be the person who performs an action or experiences a state. Often, the relationship between the subject and the rest of the sentence is looser and can be analyzed as topic-comment.

A topic is a word or phrase at the beginning of a sentence which sets the scene for the rest of the sentence. The topic is a starting point for understanding a sentence, giving background information and establishing the perspective for listeners. For this reason, time and place phrases are often used as topics.

Zhèli		yŏu	Yīngwén bào.
(Here	there	are	English-language newspapers.)

A comment is the rest of the sentence which follows the topic. Here are some examples:

Bĭ, tā yŏu; zhĭ, tā méiyou.	He has a pen; he doesn't have paper. (literally, "Pen he has; paper he doesn't.")
A: Nĭ shi năr?	Where are you calling from?
B: Wŏ shi Táiwān Dàxué.	Taiwan University.
Zhèzhāng dìtú mài shíkuài qián.	As for this map, they sell it for ten dollars.

Clearly, the last two examples are meaningful only when the relationship between the initial nouns/pronouns and verbs is understood to be one of topic-comment, not the usual subject-predicate relation of actor-action.

While there is no simple rule that tells you when to use topic-comment sentences in Chinese, some helpful generalizations can be made. These generalizations will be discussed as example sentences appear in the Reference Lists.

Jiù zài nàli, "They're right over there": You have learned jiù as "only," a synonym of zhǐ. In exchange 1, you see another use of jiù: "right," "exactly," "precisely." This word is often used to describe "right" where something is, and is followed by zài, "in/at/on."

2. A: Zhèli yǒu Yīngwén bào meiyou? Are there any English-language newspapers here?
B: Yǒu. Jiù zài nàli. Yes. They're right over there.

Notes on No. 2

Yǒu...meiyou: The first sentence in exchange 2 is a yes/no-choice question. This type of question is formed by explicitly offering the listener a choice between an affirmative and a negative answer. The negative alternative is tacked onto the end of the sentence. Similar questions exist in English. But the English question would be an impatient one, while the Chinese question is an ordinary one:

Zhèli yǒu Yīngwén bào meiyou?

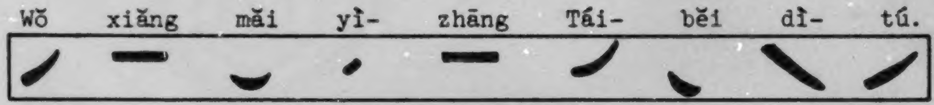
Are there any English-language newspapers here, or aren't there?

Neutral tones: Whether or not a syllable is pronounced in the Neutral tone often depends on the speed of speech and the mood the speaker is trying to convey. In informal conversation between native speakers, there are many more Neutral tones than in the more careful, deliberate speech of a language teacher speaking to foreign students. (Bear this point in mind when you find a discrepancy between the textbook marking of a word and the pronunciation of that word on tape.)

Most syllables in any stretch of spoken Chinese are neither completely "Neutral" (i.e., with no audible change in pitch for the duration of the syllable) nor completely "full" in length and amplitude. These syllables will usually be somewhere in between the two extremes.

Zhèli yǒu Yīngwen bào meiyou? Are there any English-language newspapers here?
Zhèlǐ yǒu Yīngwén bào méiyǒu?

Often a syllable will not sound like a full tone. But if you ask "Then is this syllable in the Neutral tone?" the answer will be "No, not exactly." There is no distinct dividing line between a syllable with a tone and a syllable in the Neutral tone. Very often, the most helpful answer to the question "Should this be pronounced in the Neutral tone?" is "Pronounce it the way you hear it." The language is taught in terms of four tones, but your ears hear more.



3.	A:	Wǒ xiǎng mǎi Yīngwén bào.	I would like to buy an English-language newspaper.
	B:	Hǎo. Jiù zài zhèli.	Fine. They're right here.

Note on No. 3

The auxiliary verb xiǎng is sometimes translated as "would like to" or "to want to." Here are some examples of translations you have learned for xiǎng:

Wǒ xiǎng mǎi Yīngwén bào.	I'm thinking of buying an English-language newspaper. OR I would like to buy an English-language newspaper. OR I want to buy an English-language newspaper.
Wǒ xiǎng tā xiǎng míngtiān zǒu.	I think he is planning to leave tomorrow.
Wǒ hěn xiǎng niàn shū.	I very much want to study.
Wǒ bú tài xiǎng qù.	I don't want to go very much. [Tài, meaning "too," "excessively," appears in Unit 3.]

4.	A:	Zhège duōshao qián?	How much is this one?
	B:	Wǔkuài qián.	Five dollars.

Notes on No. 4

Zhège duōshao qián? In Chinese sentences that ask for and give prices, the word shì, "to be," is usually omitted.

Zhège		duōshao qián?
(This one	is	how much money?)

Shì reappears, however, in negative and contrastive sentences: Zhège bú shi sìkuài qián, shi wǔkuài qián, "This (item) isn't four dollars; it's five dollars."

Wǔkuài qián literally means "five dollars money." The counter -kuài, "dollar," indicates the units of the general class "money" that are being counted (i.e., dollars as opposed to cents).

5.	A:	Zhège Zhōngwén bào duōshao qián?	How much is the Chinese-language newspaper?
	B:	Sānkuài qián yífèn.	Three dollars a copy.

Notes on No. 5

Notice in the sentence Zhège Zhōngwén bào duōshao qián? that the general counter -ge is used rather than the specific counter -fèn, "copy." The counter -ge is often used in talking about the KIND of thing. In this case the question is about the price of a newspaper as a publication, not about the price of a copy. The specific counter would be used to talk about a particular concrete object, as in a sentence like "This copy of the China Post is torn."

Yífèn: In Chinese, when you talk about the unit price of an item, the unit is a counter. Notice that yífèn comes at the end of the sentence, just as "a copy" does in English.

6.	A:	Nǐmen zhèli mài Měiguo zázhì bu mai?	Do you sell American magazines here?
	B:	Mài. Wǒmen zhèli mài.	Yes, we sell them here.

Notes on No. 6

Mài, "to sell," differs from the word mǎi, "to buy," only in its tone.

Nǐmen zhèli, "your place here," literally, "you here": Use *nǐmen zhèli* when talking to someone who represents a store, a bank, or other institutions. By putting *zhèli* (*zhèr*), "here," or *nàli* (*nàr*), "there," after a person's name or a pronoun, you make a phrase referring to a place associated with the person. For example, *nǐ nàli* means "over there where you are now," and *wǒ zhèli* means "here where I am now." Use these phrases when you want to express the idea of an item being close to a person (not necessarily ownership).

Nǐ nàli yǒu bǐ meiyou?	Do you have a pen over there? (i.e., "Is there a pen over there where you are?")

This kind of phrase is also used to mean a person's home: *nǐ nàli*, "your place" (used when the speaker is not at "your house"); *wǒ zhèli*, "my place" (used when the speaker is at home)

A: Chén Xiǎojiě zài náli?	Where is Miss Chén?
B: Tā zài Liú Tàitai nàli.	She is at Mrs. Liú's house.

Nǐmen zhèli mài Měiguo zázhì bu mai? In this sentence, *nǐmen zhèli* is used as a topic. Literally, the sentence means "As for your place here, are American magazines sold?"

7. A: Zhège duōshao qián?	How much is this one?
B: Sānshikuài qián yìběn.	Thirty dollars a copy.
A: Hǎo, wǒ mǎi yìběn.	Fine, I'll buy one.

Note on No. 7

The counter -*běn*, "volume," "copy," is used for both books and magazines.

8. A: Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Měiguo shū meiyou?	Do you have any American books here?
B: Duìbuqǐ, Měiguo shū wǒmen bú mài.	I'm sorry, we don't sell American books here.

Notes on No. 8

Duìbuqǐ literally means "unable to face (you)." This word is used to say "I'm sorry" when you bump into a person, arrive late, and so on. It is not the word for "I'm sorry" when you sympathize with someone else's misfortune (e.g., when a relative dies).

Měiguo shū wǒmen bú mài: In this sentence, Měiguo shū, the object of the verb mài, occurs at the beginning, in topic position. Here the order of the sentence elements is topic, subject, verb. Some speakers of English use this same word order. Compare:

Měiguo shū	wǒmen	bú mài.
(American books	we	don't sell.)

Notice that bú mài is not the ending of a yes/no-choice question. The phrase keeps its tones in this sentence.

9.	A:	Bào, zázhì, yígòng duōshao qián?	How much are the newspaper and magazine altogether?
	B:	Bào wǔkuài, zázhì sānshikuài.	The newspaper is five dollars; the magazine is thirty dollars.
	B:	Yígòng sānshiwǔkuài qián.	Altogether, it's thirty-five dollars.

Notes on No. 9

Yígòng, "altogether": In totaling something up, the items being totaled begin the sentence, in topic position, and are followed by the adverb yígòng.

In many situations you will hear prices given without the word qián.

10.	A:	Nǐmen zhèli mài dìtú bu mai?	Do you sell maps here?
	B:	Mài. Zài nàli.	We do. They're over there.

11.	B:	Nín xiǎng mǎi shénme dìtú?	What kind of map would you like to buy?
	A:	Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìzhāng Táiběi dìtú.	I would like to buy a map of Taipei.

Notes on No. 11

Shénme dìtú literally means "what map." In exchange 11, this phrase is used to mean "what kind of map."

Yìzhāng: The counter -zhāng is used for flat objects. Literally, yìzhāng Táiběi dìtú means "one-sheet Taipei map." In exchange 11, the phrase is translated simply as "a map of Taipei."

12.	A: Zhèzhāng Táiběi dìtú duōshao qián?	How much is this map of Taipei?
	B: Shíèrkuài qián.	Twelve dollars.

Note on No. 12

Zhèzhāng dìtú: Compare the two phrases which follow.

zhè		-zhāng	dìtú	(this map)
zhè	liǎng	-zhāng	dìtú	(these two maps)

In the first phrase, the counter -zhāng does not have a number in front of it. In effect, the number 1 was dropped after the specifier zhè. Notice that when a specifier and a number occur together in Chinese, the word order is just like English: zhè liǎngzhāng dìtú, "these two maps."

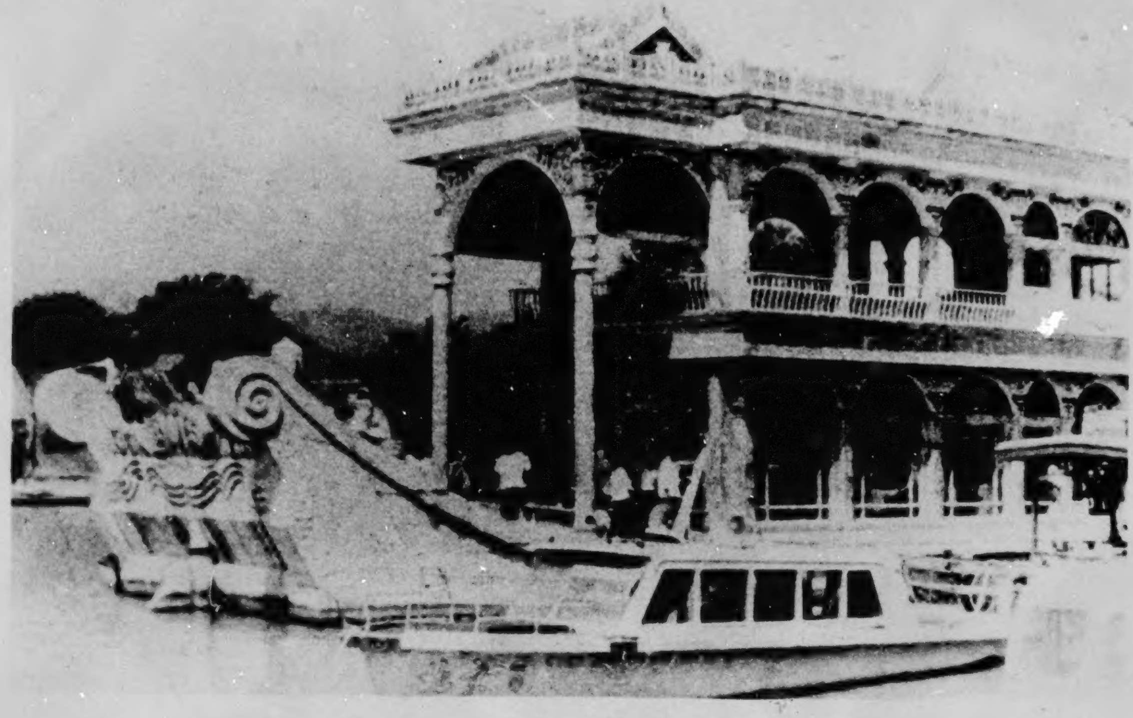
13.	yífèn(r) bàozhǐ	one newspaper
14.	yìzhī bǐ	one pen
15.	yìzhāng zhǐ	one piece of paper
16.	yìběn zìdiǎn	one dictionary
17.	Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn	Chinese-English dictionary
18.	Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn	English-Chinese dictionary
19.	huàxué	chemistry
20.	shùxué	mathematics

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

Bàozhǐ and bào, two words for "newspaper," are interchangeable.

Yìzhī bǐ: The counter for pens, -zhī, is the counter for straight, sticklike objects.

Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn, Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn: The word for "Chinese" in these expressions comes from Han Dynasty (206 B.C. to A.D. 219). Hàn is often used in titles to refer to the Chinese people and to their language.



A scene on the lake at the Summer Palace, Běijīng

DRILLS

A. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Zhèli yŏu Yīngwén bào ma? (Do you have any English-language newspapers here?)	You: Zhèli yŏu Yīngwén bào meiyou? (Do you have any English-language newspapers here?)
2.	Zhèli yŏu Zhōngwén bào ma?	Zhèli yŏu Zhōngwén bào meiyou?
3.	Zhèli yŏu Hàn-Yīng zìdiăn ma?	Zhèli yŏu Hàn-Yīng zìdiăn meiyou?
4.	Zhèli yŏu Mĕiguo shū ma?	Zhèli yŏu Mĕiguo shū meiyou?
5.	Nàli yŏu Zhōngwén zázhì ma?	Nàli yŏu Zhōngwén zázhì meiyou?
6.	Nàli yŏu Zhōngguo dìtú ma?	Nàli yŏu Zhōngguo dìtú meiyou?
7.	Nàli yŏu Yīng-Hàn zìdiăn ma?	Nàli yŏu Yīng-Hàn zìdiăn meiyou?

B. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Yīngwén bào zài wŏ zhèli. (The English-language newspaper is over here by me.)	You: Wŏ zhèli yŏu Yīngwén bào. (Over here by me is an English-language newspaper.)
2.	Zhōngguo dìtú zài nĭmen zhèli ma?	Nĭmen zhèli yŏu Zhōngguo dìtú ma?
3.	Mĕiguo zázhì zài zhèli.	Zhèli yŏu Mĕiguo zázhì.
4.	Hàn-Yīng zìdiăn zài nàli.	Nàli yŏu Hàn-Yīng zìdiăn.
5.	Zhōngwén bào zài zhèli.	Zhèli yŏu Zhōngwén bào.
6.	Zhōngwén zìdiăn zài tā nàli.	Tā nàli yŏu Zhōngwén zìdiăn.
7.	Zhōngguo lìshĭ shū zài wŏmen zhèli.	Wŏmen zhèli yŏu Zhōngguo lìshĭ shū.

C. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Zhèige duōshao qián? (How much is this?)	(cue) $5	You: Zhèige wǔkuài qián. (This is five dollars.)
2.	Nèige duōshao qián?	$2	Nèige liǎngkuài qián.
3.	Zhèiběn duōshao qián?	$40	Zhèiběn sìshikuài qián.
4.	Nèizhāng duōshao qián?	$7	Nèizhāng qíkuài qián.
5.	Zhèifèn duōshao qián?	$12	Zhèifèn shíèrkuài qián.
6.	Nèiběn duōshao qián?	$20	Nèiběn èrshikuài qián.
7.	Zhèifèn duōshao qián?	$4	Zhèifèn sìkuài qián.

D. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Zhèige zìdiǎn duōshao qián? (How much is this [kind of] dictionary?)	You: Zhèiběn zìdiǎn duōshao qián? (How much is this dictionary?)
2.	Nèige dìtú duōshao qián?	Nèizhāng dìtú duōshao qián?
3.	Zhèige zázhì duōshao qián?	Zhèiběn zázhì duōshao qián?
4.	Nèige bào duōshao qián?	Nèifèn bào duōshao qián?
5.	Zhèige lìshǐ duōshao qián?	Zhèiběn lìshǐ duōshao qián?
6.	Nèige Yīngwén bào duōshao qián?	Nèifèn Yīngwén bào duōshao qián?
7.	Zhèige Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn duōshao qián?	Zhèiběn Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn duōshao qián?

E. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Bào duōshao qián? (How much is the newspaper?)	(cue) copy	You: Yífèn bào duōshao qián? (How much is one newspaper?)

2.	Zìdiǎn duōshao qián? volume	Yìběn zìdiǎn duōshao qián?
3.	Dìtú duōshao qián? sheet	Yìzhāng dìtú duōshao qián?
4.	Zázhì liǎngkuài qián. volume	Yìběn zázhì liǎngkuài qián.
5.	Zhōngguo dìtú duōshao qián? sheet	Yìzhāng dìtú duōshao qián?
6.	Shū liùkuài qián. volume	Yìběn shū liùkuài qián.
7.	Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn bákuài qián. volume	Yìběn Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn bákuài qián.

F. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Tā xiǎng mǎi dìtú ma? (cue) 3 (Is he thinking of buying maps?)	You: Duì le, tū xiǎng mǎi sānzhāng dìtú. (Right; he is thinking of buying three maps.)
2.	Tā xiǎng mǎi shū ma? 1	Duì le, tā xiǎng mǎi yìběn shū.
3.	Tā xiǎng mǎi zìdiǎn ma? 2	Duì le, tā xiǎng mǎi liǎngběn zìdiǎn.
4.	Tā xiǎng mǎi Zhōngwén bào ma? 1	Duì le, tā xiǎng mǎi yífèn Zhōngwén bào.
5.	Tā xiǎng mǎi Měiguo zázhì ma? 1	Duì le, tā xiǎng mǎi yìběn Měiguo zázhì.
6.	Tā xiǎng mǎi Jīngjixué ma? 4	Duì le, tā xiǎng mǎi sìběn Jīngjixué.
7.	Tā xiǎng mǎi Zhèngzhixué ma? 2	Duì le, tā xiǎng mǎi liǎngběn Zhèngzhixué.

G. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Zhège bào sānkuài qián. (cue) 1 (This newspaper is three dollars.)	You: Hǎo, wǒ mǎi yífèn. (Fine; I'll buy a copy.)
2.	Zhège zìdiǎn qíkuài qián. 2	Hǎo, wǒ mǎi liǎngběn.

3.	Nàge zázhì sānshikuài qián. 1	Hǎo, wǒ mǎi yìběn.
4.	Zhège Yīngwén bào wǔkuài qián. 1	Hǎo, wǒ mǎi yífèn.
5.	Nàge dìtú shíèrkuài qián. 3	Hǎo, wǒ mǎi sānzhāng.
6.	Nàge Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn wǔshikuài qián. 2	Hǎo, wǒ mǎi liǎngběn.
7.	Zhège Táiběi dìtú shíwǔkuài qián. 1	Hǎo, wǒ mǎi yìzhāng.

H. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Zhèifèn bào duōshao qián? (How much is this newspaper?)	You: Zhèige bào duōshao qián yífèn? (How much is this newspaper per copy?)
2.	Zhèiběn zìdiǎn wǔshikuài qián.	Zhèige zìdiǎn wǔshikuài qián yìběn.
3.	Zhèizhāng dìtú duōshao qián?	Zhèige dìtú duōshao qián yìzhāng?
4.	Zhèiběn Měiguo shū wǔkuài qián.	Zhèige Měiguo shū wǔkuài qián yìběn.
5.	Zhèifèn Yīngwén bào duōshao qián?	Zhèige Yīngwén bào duōshao qián yífèn?
6.	Zhèiběn zázhì liǎngkuài qián.	Zhèige zázhì liǎngkuài qián yìběn.
7.	Zhèiběn Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn duōshao qián?	Zhèige Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn duōshao qián yìběn?

I. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Zhège zázhì duōshao qián? (cue) $30 (How much is this magazine?)	You: Zhège zázhì sānshikuài qián yìběn. (Thirty dollars a copy.)
2.	Nàge Táiběi dìtú duōshao qián? $12	Nàge Táiběi dìtú shíèrkuài qián yìzhāng.

3.	Zhège Zhōngwén bào duōshao qián? $3	Zhège Zhōngwén bào sānkuài qián yífèn.
4.	Nàge Měiguo zázhì duōshao qián? $30	Nàge Měiguo zázhì sānshikuài qián yìběn.
5.	Zhège Yīngwén bào duōshao qián? $5	Zhège Yīngwén bào wǔkuài qián yífèn.
6.	Nàge Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn duōshao qián? $42	Nàge Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn sìshièrkuài qián yìběn.
7.	Zhège Táiwān dìtú duōshao qián? $10	Zhège Táiwān dìtú shíkuài qián yìzhāng.

J. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Yīngwén bào ma? (Do you have English-language newspapers here?)	You: Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Yīngwén bào meiyou? (Do you have English-language newspapers here?)
OR	Nǐmen zhèli mài Yīngwén bào ma? (Do you sell English-language newspapers here?)	Nǐmen zhèli mài Yīngwén bào bu mai? (Do you sell English-language newspapers here?)
2.	Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Zhōngwén zázhì ma?	Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Zhōngwén zázhì meiyou?
3.	Nǐmen zhèli mài Táiběi dìtú ma?	Nǐmen zhèli mài Táiběi dìtú bu mai?
4.	Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn ma?	Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn meiyou?
5.	Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn ma?	Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn meiyou?
6.	Nǐmen zhèli mài Zhōngwén bào ma?	Nǐmen zhèli mài Zhōngwén bào bu mai?

K. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Měiguo shū meiyou?	(cue) yǒu (Do you have American books here?)	You: Yǒu, zài nàli. (We do, over there.)
OR	Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Měiguo shū meiyou?	(cue) méiyou (Do you have American books here?)	Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen méiyou. (I'm sorry, we don't)
2.	Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Zhōngguo dìtú meiyou?	yǒu	Yǒu, zài nàli.
3.	Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Zhōngguo lìshǐ meiyou?	méiyou	Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen méiyou.
4.	Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Zhōngwén bào meiyou?	yǒu	Yǒu, zài nàli.
5.	Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Měiguo zázhì meiyou?	méiyou	Dùibuqǐ, wǒmen meíyou.
6.	Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Yīngwén shū meiyou?	yǒu	Yǒu, zài nàli.

L. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Bào duōshao qián?	(cue) zázhì (How much is the newspaper?)	You: Bào, zázhì yígòng duōshao qián? (How much are the newspaper and the magazine altogether?)
2.	Dìtú duōshao qián?	zìdiǎn	Dìtú, zìdiǎn yígòng duōshao qián?
3.	Zázhì duōshao qián?	bào	Zázhì, bào yígòng duōshao qián?
4.	Zìdiǎn duōshao qián?	dìtú	Zìdiǎn, dìtú yígòng duōshao qián?
5.	Bào duōshao qián?	zázhì	Bào, zázhì yígòng duōshao qián?
6.	Dìtú duōshao qián?	zìdiǎn	Dìtú, zìdiǎn yígòng duōshao qián?
7.	Zázhì duōshao qián?	bào	Zázhì, bào yígòng duōshao qián?

M. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Tā xiǎng mǎi shénme dìtú? (cue) Táiběi (What kind of map is he thinking of buying?)	You: Tā xiǎng mǎi yìzhāng Táiběi dìtú. (He is thinking of buying a map of Taipei.)
2.	Tā xiǎng mǎi shénme zìdiǎn? Hàn-Yīng	Tā xiǎng mǎi yìběn Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn.
3.	Tā xiǎng mǎi shénme bào? Zhōngwén	Tā xiǎng mǎi yífèn Zhōngwén bào.
4.	Tā xiǎng mǎi shénme shū? Měiguó	Tā xiǎng mǎi yìběn Měiguo shū.
5.	Tā xiǎng mǎi shénme dìtú? Táiwān	Tā xiǎng mǎi yìzhāng Táiwān dìtú.
6.	Tā xiǎng mǎi shénme zázhì? Měiguó	Tā xiǎng mǎi yìběn Měiguo zázhì.
7.	Tā xiǎng mǎi shénme shū? Yīngwén	Tā xiǎng mǎi yìběn Yīngwén shū.

UNIT 2

REFERENCE LIST

(in Běijīng)

1.	A:	Wǒ xiǎng mǎi diǎnr diǎnxin.	I'm going to buy some pastries.
2.	A:	Zhèige xiǎo diǎnxin duōshao qián yìjīn?	How much are these small pastries per catty?
	B:	Bāmáo qián yìjīn.	Eighty cents a catty.
3.	A:	Gěi wo liǎngjīn.	Give me two catties.
4.	A:	Qǐng ni gěi wo liǎngjīn.	Please give me two catties.
5.	B:	Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?	What else do you want?
	A:	Wǒ hái yào qìshuǐ.	I want some soda too.
6.	A:	Duōshao qián yìpíng?	How much is it per bottle?
	B:	Liǎngmáo wǔfēn qián.	It's twenty-five cents.
7.	A:	Zhèi shi sānkuài qián.	Here's three dollars.
	B:	Zhǎo ni liùmáo wǔfēn qián.	Here's sixty-five cents (in) change.
	A:	Xièxie. Zàijiàn.	Thank you. Good-bye.
	B:	Zàijiàn.	Good-bye.
8.	A:	Dà píngguǒ duōshao qián yìjīn?	How much are the large apples per catty?
	B:	Dàde sìmáo wǔfēn qián yìjín.	The large ones are forty-five cents a catty.
9.	A:	Xiǎode duōshao qián yìjīn?	How much per catty are the small ones?
	B:	Sānmáo wǔ.	Thirty-five cents.
10.	A:	Qǐng gěi wo sānjīn nèige xiǎode.	Please give me three catties of those small ones.
	B:	Hǎo. Sānjīn yíkuài líng wǔ.	Certainly. Three catties are $1.05.
11.	B:	Nín hái yào shénme?	What else would you like?
	A:	Wǒ bú yào shénme le.	I don't want anything else.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

12.	júzi	oranges, tangerines
13.	píjiǔ	beer
14.	yíkuài féizào	one bar of soap
15.	zuò mǎimai	to do business
16.	dàren	adult
17.	xiǎoháizi	child

A fruit seller in central Taiwan

VOCABULARY

dà	to be large
dàren	adult
-de	(marker of modification)
diǎnr	a little, some
diǎnxin (yíkuài, yìjīn)	pastry, snack
féizào (yíkuài)	soap
-fēn	cent
gěi	to give
hái	also, additionally
-jīn	catty (1.1 pound)
júzi	oranges, tangerines
-kuài	piece (counter)
líng	zero
mǎimai	business
-máo	dime
píjiǔ	beer
-píng	bottle
píngguǒ (píngguo)	apple
qǐng	please
qìshuǐ	soda, carbonated soft drink
xiǎo	to be small
xiǎoháizi	child
yào	to want
zàijiàn	good-bye
zhǎo	to give change
zuò mǎimai	to do business

(introduced on P-2 tape)

gōngxiāo hézuòshè	supply and marketing cooperative

REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Wǒ xiǎng mǎi diǎnr diǎnxin. — I'm going to buy some pastries.

Note on No. 1

Diǎnr: The word yìdiǎnr (or yìdiǎn) is a combination of the number yī, "one," and the counter diǎn, "a dot," "a little bit." The number yī is often toneless, or, as in this case, dropped when its meaning is "a" rather than "one."

The Běijīng version of this word, written diǎnr or yidiǎnr, is actually pronounced as if written diǎr or yidiǎr. These words rhyme with the English "tar."

2. A: Zhèige xiǎo diǎnxin duōshao qián yìjīn? — How much are these small pastries per catty?
   B: Bāmáo qián yìjīn. — Eighty cents a catty.

Notes on No. 2

A jīn is a unit of weight, usually translated as "catty." In most parts of China a jīn equals 1.1 pound.

Bāmáo: You must use the equivalent of "eight dimes" to say "eighty cents." It is wrong to say bāshifēn for "eighty cents."

3. A: Gěi wo liǎngjīn. — Give me two catties.

4. A: Qǐng ni gěi wo liǎngjīn. — Please give me two catties.

Notes on Nos. 3-4

Indirect object: Notice that the indirect object, wǒ, precedes the direct object, liǎngjīn, just as "me" precedes "two catties" in English.

Gĕi	wo	liăngjīn.
(Give	me	two catties.)

Polite requests: A blunt imperative in Chinese has the same word order as a command in English: (*Nĭ*), verb, indirect object, direct object. To make a polite request in Chinese, start off with *qĭng*, "please," or *qĭng ni*, "please you." More literally, *qĭng* means "to ask," "to request," but the idiomatic equivalent of *qĭng* and *qĭng ni* is "please." Here are the three types of imperatives:

		Gĕi	wo	liăngjīn.	(Give me two catties.)
Qĭng		gĕi	wo	liăngjīn.	(Please give me two catties. OR Give me two catties, please.)
Qĭng	ni	gĕi	wo	liăngjīn.	

5.	B: Nín hái yào diănr shénme?	What else do you want?
	A: Wŏ hái yào qìshuĭ.	I want some soda too.

Notes on No. 5

Hái: In exchange 5, *hái* means something like "in addition": "What do you want a little of in addition?" Since *hái* is an adverb, it is placed before the verb.

Qìshuĭ, "soda," refers to a carbonated soft drink, not to club soda.

6.	A: Duōshao qián yìpíng?	How much is it per bottle?
	B: Liăngmáo wŭfēn qián.	It's twenty-five cents.

Notes on No. 6

Tone change for yī: The number 1, *yī*, changes tone when followed by another syllable. When followed by a syllable with a Falling tone, *yī* has a Rising tone. When followed by syllables with High, Rising, or Low tones, *yī* has a Falling tone.

HIGH TONE FOLLOWS	RISING TONE FOLLOWS	LOW TONE FOLLOWS	FALLING TONE FOLLOWS
yìjīn	yìpíng	yìběn	yífèn
yìzhāng	yìmáo	yìdiǎn	yíkuài
yìzhī	yìnián		Yíyuè
yìtiān			

Liǎngmáo wǔfēn qián: Notice that "twenty-five cents" is expressed in Chinese as dimes plus cents: "two dimes and five cents."

7.	A:	Zhèi shi sānkuài qián.	Here's three dollars.
	B:	Zhǎo ni liùmáo wǔfēn qián.	Here's sixty-five cents (in) change.
	A:	Xièxie. Zàijiàn.	Thank you. Good-bye.
	B:	Zàijiàn.	Good-bye.

Notes on No. 7

Zhèi: In the first sentence of exchange 7, *zhèi* is used without an attached counter. A specifier was also used without a counter in *Nèi shi Mínzú Fàndiàn*, "That's the Nationalities Hotel."

The verb *zhǎo* means "to give change." *Zhǎo ni liùmáo wǔfēn qián* means something like "I'm giving you sixty-five cents in change."

8.	A:	Dà píngguǒ duōshao qián yìjīn?	How much are the large apples per catty?
	B:	Dàde sìmáo wǔfēn qián yìjīn.	The large ones are forty-five cents a catty.
9.	A:	Xiǎode duōshao qián yìjīn?	How much per catty are the small ones?
	B:	Sānmáo wǔ.	Thirty-five cents.

Notes on Nos. 8-9

The words dàde and xiǎode are translated as "large ones" and "small ones." The nonspecific noun "ones" may be used because the specific thing being talked about (apples) was mentioned in an earlier sentence. The marker -de shows that dà and xiǎo modify a noun mentioned earlier in the conversation. Like their English translations "big ones" and "small ones," dàde and xiǎode act as nouns.

Sānmáo wǔ is an abbreviated way of giving a price. The last unit of money (in this case, fēn, "cent") and the word for "money," qián, are left out. The unit omitted is always the next unit below the unit which is expressed. For instance, "three dollars and fifty cents" is sānkuài wǔ. You know that the unit omitted is máo, "dimes," because it is the next unit below kuài, "dollars." A one-unit price such as "three dollars" or "fifty cents" can never be abbreviated this way, because there would be no way of determining the unit marker omitted.

10.	A:	Qǐng gěi wo sānjīn nèige xiǎode.	Please give me three catties of those small ones.
	B:	Hǎo. Sānjīn yíkuài líng wǔ.	Certainly. Three catties are $1.05.

Notes on No. 10

Sānjīn nèige xiǎode: The elements of this phrase appear in the following order: number, counter, specifier, noun. (In Chinese, units of measure, like jīn, act as counters.) Earlier, you learned phrases whose elements appeared in a different order: specifier, number, counter, noun (zhèi liǎngzhāng dìtú). In both cases, the word order for the constructions is the same in Chinese and English.

sān	-jīn		nèige		xiǎode
(three	catties	of	those		small ones)

nèi	sān		-jīn		xiǎode
(those	three		catties	of	small ones)

Nèige is translated as "those" in the first sentence of exchange 10. Strictly speaking, nèige can refer only to one item, since -ge is the counter for units. The apples, however, are regarded collectively as one category of things.

Yíkuài líng wǔ: In a price, the word líng is always used for a "zero" in the dimes position. In yíkuài líng wǔ, líng appears in the "dimes" place, so you know that wǔ must refer to cents.

11.	B:	Nín hái yào shénme?	What else would you like?
	A:	Wǒ bú yào shenme le.	I don't want anything else.

Notes on No. 11

Bú yào shenme: The unstressed (and often toneless) word shenme corresponds to the indefinite pronoun "anything" in negative sentences.

Nǐ	yào	shénme?
(You	want	what thing?)

Wǒ	bú yào	shenme.
(I	don't want	anything.)

This construction is commonly used to say "I don't want (I'm not buying, I'm not reading) anything MUCH."

Nǐ mǎi shénme?	What are you buying?
Wǒ bù mǎi shenme, zhǐ mǎi yífèn bào.	I'm not buying anything much; I'm just buying a newspaper.

Le: In the second sentence of exchange 11, new-situation le is used in a negative sentence. The sentence says that NOW Mr. Anderson does not want anything (while before, of course, he did want things).

12.	júzi	oranges, tangerines
13.	píjiǔ	beer
14.	yíkuài féizào	one bar of soap
15.	zuò mǎimai	to do business
16.	dàren	adult
17.	xiǎoháizi	child

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

Júzi: In earlier modules, this word would have been written jǘzi. Starting in the Money Module, the umlaut (¨) will be written only after n and l, following the normal spelling rule in Pinyin romanization. You will have to remember that the letter *u* after *j*, *q*, *x*, and *y* is pronounced as if it were written *ü*.

Yǐkuài féizào: The counter used for soap is *-kuài*. It literally means "a lump" but is also translated as "a piece."

Zuò mǎimai, "to do business/trade"

Tā lái zuò mǎimai le.	He has come to do business.

Dàren, "adult," literally, "big person"

Tā yǐjīng shi dàren le.	He is already an adult.

Xiǎoháizi: Although *háizi* means "child," the expression more commonly used is *xiǎoháizi*, literally, "small child."

DRILLS

A. Expansion Drill

1.	**Speaker:** Zhèige diǎnxin duōshao qián? (How much are these pastries?)	**You:** Zhèige diǎnxin duōshao qián yìjīn? (How much are these pastries per catty?)
2.	Zhèige qìshuǐ duōshao qián?	Zhèige qìshuǐ duōshao qián yìpíng?
3.	Nèige píngguǒ duōshao qián?	Nèige píngguǒ duōshao qián yìjīn?
4.	Nèige júzi duōshao qián?	Nèige júzi duōshao qián yìjīn?
5.	Nèige píjiǔ duōshao qián?	Nèige píjiǔ duōshao qián yìpíng?
6.	Zhèige féizào duōshao qián?	Zhèige féizào duōshao qián yíkuài?
7.	Dà píngguǒ duōshao qián?	Dà píngguǒ duōshao qián yìjīn?

B. Response Drill

1.	**Speaker:** Zhèige xiǎo diǎnxin bāmáo qián yìjīn. (cue) liǎng (These pastries are eighty cents per catty.)	**You:** Hǎo. Qǐng ni gěi wo liǎngjīn. (Fine. Please give me two catties.)
2.	Zhèige xiǎo píngguǒ sānmáo qián yìjīn. liǎng	Hǎo. Qǐng ni gěi wo liǎngjīn.
3.	Nèige qìshuǐ yìmáo èr yìpíng. sān	Hǎo. Qǐng ni gěi wo sānpíng.
4.	Zhèige dà píngguǒ sìmáo liù yìjīn. yī	Hǎo. Qǐng ni gěi wo yìjīn.
5.	Nèige Zhōngguo dìtú liǎngkuài wǔ yìzhāng. yī	Hǎo. Qǐng ni gěi wo yìzhāng.
6.	Zhèige píjiǔ liǎngmáo wǔ yìpíng. sì	Hǎo. Qǐng ni gěi wo sìpíng.
7.	Nèige Xīnhuá Zìdiǎn yíkuài liǎngmáo wǔ yìběn. yī	Hǎo. Qǐng ni gěi wo yìběn.

C. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Zhèige píjiǔ hěn hǎo. (This beer is very good.)	You: Zhèige píjiǔ hěn hǎo. Duōshao qián yìpíng? (This beer is very good. How much is it per bottle?)
2.	Zhèige júzi hěn hǎo.	Zhèige júzi hěn hǎo. Duōshao qián yìjīn?
3.	Nèige píngguǒ hěn hǎo.	Nèige píngguǒ hěn hǎo. Duōshao qián yìjīn?
4.	Zhèige féizào hěn hǎo.	Zhèige féizào hěn hǎo. Duōshao qián yíkuài?
5.	Nèige zìdiǎn hěn hǎo.	Nèige zìdiǎn hěn hǎo. Duōshao qián yìběn?
6.	Zhèige qìshuǐ hěn hǎo.	Zhèige qìshuǐ hěn hǎo. Duōshao qián yìpíng?
7.	Nèige dìtú hěn hǎo.	Nèige dìtú hěn hǎo. Duōshao qián yìzhāng?

D. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme? (cue) qìshuǐ (What else would you like?)	You: Wǒ hái yào liǎngpíng qìshuǐ. (I would like two bottles of soda too.)
OR	Nín hái yǒu shénme? (cue) píjiǔ (What else do you have?)	Wǒ hái yǒu liǎngpíng píjiǔ. (I have two bottles of beer too.)
2.	Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme? féizào	Wǒ hái yào liǎngkuài féizào.
3.	Nín hái yǒu shénme? dìtú	Wǒ hái yǒu liǎngzhāng dìtú.
4.	Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme? júzi	Wǒ hái yào liǎngjīn júzi.
5.	Nín hái yǒu shénme? zìdiǎn	Wǒ hái yǒu liǎngběn zìdiǎn.
6.	Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme? diǎnxin	Wǒ hái yào liǎngjīn diǎnxin.

E. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Dà píngguǒ duōshao qián? (cue) máo (How much are the big apples?)	You: Dàde jǐmáo qián yìjīn? (How much [how many dimes] are the big ones per catty?)
2.	Dà júzi duōshao qián? máo	Dàde jǐmáo qián yìjīn?
3.	Xiǎo zìdiǎn duōshao qián? kuài	Xiǎode jǐkuài qián yìběn?
4.	Dà dìtú duōshao qián? máo	Dàde jǐmáo qián yìzhāng?
5.	Xiǎo júzi duōshao qián? máo	Xiǎode jǐmáo qián yìjīn?
6.	Dà zìdiǎn duōshao qián? kuài	Dàde jǐkuài qián yìběn?
7.	Xiǎo diǎnxin duōshao qián? máo	Xiǎode jǐmáo qián yìjīn?

F. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Dàde duōshao qián yìjīn? (cue) 45¢ (How much are the big ones per catty?	You: Dàde sìmáo wǔfēn qián yìjīn. (The big ones are forty-five cents a catty.)
2.	Xiǎode duōshao qián yìjīn? 35¢	Xiǎode sānmáo wǔfēn qián yìjīn.
3.	Xiǎode duōshao qián yíkuài? 25¢	Xiǎode liǎngmáo wǔfēn qián yíkuài.
4.	Dàde duōshao qián yìzhāng? $2.15	Dàde liǎngkuài yìmáo wǔfēn qián yìzhāng.
5.	Xiǎode duōshao qián yìběn? $1.25	Xiǎode yíkuài liǎngmáo wǔfēn qián yìběn.
6.	Xiǎode duōshao qián yìjīn? 85¢	Xiǎode bāmáo wǔfēn qián yìjīn.
7.	Dàde duōshao qián yìjīn? 45¢	Dàde sìmáo wǔfēn qián yìjīn.

G. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Dà píngguǒ jǐmáo qián yìjīn? (cue) 46¢ (How much [how many dimes] are the big apples per catty?)	You: Dà píngguǒ sìmáo liùfēn qián yìjīn. (The big apples are forty-six cents a catty.)
2.	Xiǎo diǎnxīn jǐmáo qián yìjīn? 80¢	Xiǎo diǎnxīn bāmáo qián yìjīn.
3.	Zhōngguo píjiǔ jǐmáo qián yìpíng? 25¢	Zhōngguo píjiǔ liǎngmáo wǔfēn qián yìpíng.
4.	Zhōngguo dìtú jǐmáo qián yìzhāng? 50¢	Zhōngguo dìtú wǔmáo qián yìzhāng.
5.	Xīnhuá Zìdiǎn jǐkuài qián yìběn? $1.25	Xīnhuá Zìdiǎn yíkuài liǎngmáo wǔfēn qián yìběn.
6.	Xiǎo píngguǒ jǐmáo qián yìjīn? 30¢	Xiǎo píngguǒ sānmáo qián yìjīn.
7.	Dà júzi jǐmáo qián yìjīn? 40¢	Dà júzi sìmáo qián yìjīn.

H. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Wǒ yào nèige xiǎode. (cue) liǎngjīn (I want those small ones.)	You: Qǐng ni gěi wo liǎngjīn nèige xiǎode. (Please give me two catties of those small ones.)
2.	Wǒ yào nèige dàde. sìjīn	Qǐng ni gěi wo sìjīn nèige dàde.
3.	Wǒ yào zhèige xiǎode. sānzhāng	Qǐng ni gěi wo sānzhāng zhèige xiǎode.
4.	Wǒ yào zhèige dàde. liǎngzhāng	Qǐng ni gěi wo liǎngzhāng zhèige dàde.
5.	Wǒ yào nèige xiǎode. yìjīn	Qǐng ni gěi wo yìjīn nèige xiǎode.
6.	Wǒ yào zhèige dàde. wǔjīn	Qǐng ni gěi wo wǔjīn zhèige dàde.
7.	Wǒ yào nèige xiǎode. liùjīn	Qǐng ni gěi wo liùjīn nèige xiǎode.

I. Response Drill

For your answers, use specific counters with liăng-.

1.	Speaker: Nín hái yào diănr shénme? (cue) píngguŏ (What else would you like?)	You: Wŏ hái yào liăngjīn píngguŏ. (I would like two catties of apples.)
OR	Nín hái yŏu shénme? (cue) qìshuĭ (What else do you have?)	Wŏ hái yŏu liăngpíng qìshuĭ. (I have two bottles of soda.)
3.	Nín hái yào diănr shénme? diănxin	Wŏ hái yào liăngjīn diănxin.
4.	Nín hái yào diănr shénme? júzi	Wŏ hái yào liăngjīn júzi.
5.	Nín hái yŏu shénme? féizào	Wŏ hái yŏu liăngkuài féizào.
6.	Nín hái yào diănr shénme? dìtú	Wŏ hái yào liăngzhāng dìtú.
7.	Nín hái yào diănr shénme? píngguŏ	Wŏ hái yào liăngjīn píngguŏ.

J. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Nín hái yào diănr shénme? (What else would you like?)	You: Wŏ bú yào shenme le. (I don't want anything else.)
OR	Nín hái yŏu shénme? (What else do you have?)	Wŏ méiyou shénme le. (I don't have anything else.)
2.	Tā hái yào diănr shénme?	Tā bú yào shenme le.
3.	Tā hái yŏu shénme?	Tā méiyou shénme le.
4.	Wáng Xiānsheng hái yào diănr shénme?	Wáng Xiānsheng bú yào shenme le.
5.	Hú Tàitai hái yŏu shénme?	Hú Tàitai méiyou shénme le.
6.	Lĭ Xiānsheng hái yào diănr shénme?	Lĭ Xiānsheng bú yào shenme le.

UNIT 3

REFERENCE LIST

(in Běijīng)

1.	A:	Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan nèige huāpíng.	Please give me that vase to look at.
2.	B:	Něige? Zhèige lánde, háishi zhèige hóngde?	Which one? This blue one or this red one?
3.	A:	Nèi liǎngge dōu gěi wo kànkan, hǎo ma?	Give me both of them to look at. All right?
	B:	Hǎo.	Certainly.
4.	A:	Lánde tài guì le.	The blue one is too expensive.
5.	A:	Wǒ mǎi hóngde ba. Hóngde piányi.	I'll buy the red one, I guess. The red one is cheaper.
	B:	Èng, hóngde piányi.	Mm, the red one is cheaper.
6.	C:	Zhèi liǎngge xuésheng, něige hǎo?	Which of these two students is better?
	D:	Sīmǎ Xìn hǎo.	Sīmǎ Xìn is better.
7.	A:	Nǐ yǒu dà yìdiǎnrde ma?	Do you have one a little larger?
	B:	Yǒu. Nín kàn zhèige zěnmeyàng?	We do. What do you think of this one?
8.	A:	Zhèige dàde zhēn hǎokàn.	This large one is really nice looking.
9.	A:	Hǎo, wǒ mǎi dàde ba.	Okay, I'll buy the large one, I guess.
	B:	Nín yào jǐge?	How many do you want?
	A:	Qǐng gěi wo liǎngge ba.	How about giving me two, please.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

10.	bái	to be white
11.	hēi	to be black

12.	huáng	to be yellow, to be brown
13.	lǜ	to be green
14.	jiù	to be old, to be used, to be worn
15.	xīn	to be new
16.	gāo	to be tall
17.	ǎi	to be short (of stature)
18.	gāoxìng	to be happy
19.	nánkàn	to be ugly
20.	yìbǎ yǔsǎn	one umbrella
21.	kàn	to read, to look at, to visit

VOCABULARY

ăi	to be short (of stature)
-bă	(counter for things with handles)
bái	to be white
gāo	to be tall
gāoxìng	to be happy
guì	to be expensive
háishi	or
hăo	to be better
hăokàn	to be beautiful, to be nice looking
hēi	to be black
hóng	to be red
huáng	to be yellow, to be brown
huāpíng	vase
jiù	to be old, to be used, to be worn
kàn	to think (express an opinion)
kàn	to read, to look at, to visit
kànkan	to look at
lán	to be blue
lǜ	to be green
nánkàn	to be ugly
piányi	to be inexpensive, to be cheap
tài	too (excessive)
xīn	to be new
yŭsăn (yìbă)	umbrella
zĕnmeyàng	to be how, how is___?
zhēn	really

REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan nèige huāpíng. — Please give me that vase to look at.

Notes on No. 1

Reduplication of action verbs: In the sentence above, the action verb kàn appears in reduplicated form: kànkan [stress on first syllable; second syllable unstressed, usually toneless]. The reduplicated verb could also have been formed with yī, "one," between the two syllables: kànyikan, literally, "to look one look." Kànyikan or kàn is used when you want to say "to have/take a look (at something)."

Many, but not all, action verbs may be reduplicated. Of the verbs you have learned, niàn, shuō, tīng, xiě, and xiǎng may be reduplicated this way.

Reduplication is another way of indicating aspect.* By using a reduplicated verb, you express the INDEFINITENESS of an action. Use a reduplicated verb when the duration or extent of an action or the amount of a verb object is indefinite. For example, saying Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan nèige huāpíng indicates an indefinite duration for the action of looking at the vase.

There are several reasons for using a reduplicated verb to indicate indefinite action. In the Reference List sentence above, a speaker asks permission to look at something; therefore, his request must be tentative and undemanding.

Reduplicated verbs are not commonly used with the aspect marker le (perhaps because stressing both the indefiniteness and the completion of an action would not be consistent). When completion le does occur with a reduplicated verb, the marker is placed after the first half of that verb and before the second half. The second half of the reduplicated verb then resembles an object, as in "looked one look" or "thought a thought."

Wǒ kànle kàn nèige huāpíng. — I looked at that vase.

Kàn and xiǎng are the two verbs you have learned which may take le when reduplicated.

To make a reduplicated verb negative (with bú or méi) would be as wrong as saying in English "I don't look at it a little." To say that an action was not performed, is habitually not performed, or will not be performed, use the simple form of the verb, not the reduplicated form:

Zhèifèn bào, wo hái méiyou kàn. — I haven't read this paper yet.

---

*The aspect markers -guo, le, and ne have already been introduced. For the meaning of the word "aspect," see BIO, Unit 4.

Wǒ bú kàn Zhōngwén bào.	I don't read Chinese newspapers.
Wǒ bú kàn zhèige.	I'm not going to read this.

The objects of reduplicated action verbs cannot be indefinite. For example, it is wrong to say *Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan yige huāpíng*, because *yige huāpíng*, "a vase," is indefinite--*which* vase is not known. However, reduplicated verbs may have noun objects which are specified, like *nèige huāpíng*, "that vase."

Examples

Niànnian shū, kànkan bào dōu hěn hǎo.	Studying a little and reading a little are both nice.
Tā jiù shi shuōshuo.	He's just talking.
Nǐ tīngting tā shuō shénme.	Listen to what he is saying.
Tā tiāntiān dōu kànkan shū, xiěxie zì.	Every day he reads a little and writes characters a bit.
Nǐ xiǎngxiang tā xìng shénme.	Try to think what his surname is.

(Notice that in some of the examples the verb *kàn* means "to read," not "to look at.")

2. B:	Něige? Zhèige lánde, háishi zhèige hóngde?	Which one? This blue one or this red one?

Note on No. 2

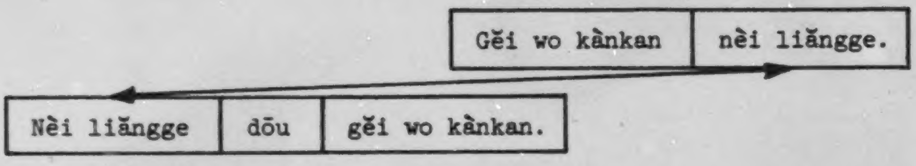
Háishi means "or." In a choice-type question without *háishi*, both choices must include a verb; but in a question containing *háishi*, the second verb may be omitted.

Nǐ	yào	zhèige,		yào	nèige?
Nǐ	yào	zhèige	háishi	yào	nèige?
Nǐ	yào	zhèige	háishi		nèige?

3. A:	Nèi liǎngge dōu gěi wo kànkan, hǎo ma?	Give me both of them to look at. All right?
B:	Hǎo.	Certainly.

Note on No. 3

The word order of the first sentence is determined by the adverb *dōu*. Normally, an object in a Chinese sentence follows the verb. But any object referred to by *dōu* must come before *dōu*. And *dōu* itself, because it is an adverb, must precede the verb. Therefore, the object *nèi liǎngge* has been moved to the initial topic position in the sentence above. Compare:



Gěi wo kànkan | nèi liǎngge.

Nèi liǎngge | dōu | gěi wo kànkan.

4. A:	Lánde tài guì le.	The blue one is too expensive.

Note on No. 4

Le: The speaker is using new-situation *le* to reinforce the meaning of *tài*, "too." The new situation is the fact that the price is more than the speaker expected.

5. A:	Wǒ mǎi hóngde ba. Hóngde piányi.	I'll buy the red one, I guess. The red one is cheaper.
B:	Èng, hóngde piányi.	Mm, the red one is cheaper.

Notes on No. 5

Piányi: The *n* in this word is not pronounced but gives a nasal quality to the vowels around it.

The English comparative form "cheaper" has been used for the basic form *piányi* in the translation of exchange 5. The Chinese says, in effect, "It's the red one that's cheap." But adjectival verbs usually should be understood as comparatives.

Něige piányi?	Which one is cheaper?
Hóngde piányi ma?	Is the red one cheaper?
Hóngde piányi.	The red one is cheaper.

However, when preceded by adverbs (including the negative adverb bù), adjectival verbs generally lose their comparative meaning.

Zhèige yě piányi.	This one is cheap too.
Zhèige bù piányi.	This one isn't cheap.

When no other adverb is appropriate, an adjectival verb may be made non-comparative by the addition of an unstressed hěn. Since its function is simply to show that the verb is not comparative, it does not have the emphatic sense of stressed hěn or English "very."

Zhèige		piányi.	(This one is		cheaper.)
Zhèige	hěn	piányi.	(This one is		cheap.)
Zhèige	HĚN	piányi.	(This one is	VERY	cheap.)

Èng is actually pronounced /ǹg/, or like the nasal uh in "uh-huh."

6.	C:	Zhèi liǎngge xuésheng, něige hǎo?	Which of these two students is better?
	D:	Sīmǎ Xìn hǎo.	Sīmǎ Xìn is better.

Note on No. 6

Zhèi liǎngge xuésheng, něige hǎo? Compare this Chinese sentence with an English translation:

Zhèi liǎngge xuésheng,	něige	hǎo?
([Of] these two students,	which	is better?)

In both English and Chinese, the items being compared begin the sentence, in topic position. This word order is required in Chinese but is somewhat unusual in English.

7.	A: Nĭ yŏu dà yìdiănrde ma?	Do you have one a little larger?
	B: Yŏu. Nín kàn zhèige zĕnmeyàng?	We do. What do you think of this one?

Notes on No. 7

Dà yìdiănrde: An adjectival verb used in a comparison is often followed by the word yìdiăn(r): dà yìdiănr, "larger by a little bit." Notice that the marker -de comes at the end of the modifying phrase: dà yìdiănrde, "one that is larger by a little bit," but that the modified noun which would follow is omitted.

Kàn: The verb kàn means "to look at." Nín kàn, therefore, can simply mean "Look." Often, however, kàn is used to express an opinion and is best translated as "in your/my/his/her view" or, even more idiomatically, by the verb "think."

Nín kàn, huāpíng jiù zài nàr.	Look, the vase is right over there.
Wŏ kàn zhèige huāpíng tài guì.	I think this vase is too expensive.

Zhèige zĕnmeyàng? does not contain the verb shì. Likewise, an answer to this question would not include shì. Compare the Chinese and English versions of these sentences:

Zhèige	zĕnmeyàng?
(This	is how?)

Zhèige	hen hăo.
(This	is good.)

8.	A: Zhèige dàde zhēn hăokàn.	This large one is really nice looking.

9.	A: Hăo, wŏ măi dàde ba.	Okay, I'll buy the large one, I guess.
	B: Nín yào yíge?	How many do you want?
	A: Qĭng gĕi wo liăngge ba.	How about giving me two, please.

Note on No. 9

Ba: You have learned that *ba* can be used as the marker for a question which expresses supposition about an answer, requiring confirmation from the listener: *Nǐ shi Wèi Shàoxiào ba?* "You are Major Weiss, aren't you?" In exchange 9, *ba* is used as the marker for a tentative statement or imperative. The marker *ba* makes statements less certain and requests less blunt. Like *ma*, *ba* is always placed at the end of a sentence.

Wǒ mǎi báide.		(I'll buy the white ones.)
Wǒ mǎi báide	ba.	(I'll buy the white ones, I guess.)

Qǐng gěi wo liǎngge.		(Give me two, please.)
Qǐng gěi wo liǎngge	ba.	(How about giving me two, please.)

10.	bái	to be white
11.	hēi	to be black
12.	huáng	to be yellow, to be brown
13.	lǜ	to be green
14.	jiù	to be old, to be used, to be worn
15.	xīn	to be new
16.	gāo	to be tall
17.	ǎi	to be short (of stature)
18.	gāoxìng	to be happy
19.	nánkàn	to be ugly
20.	yìbǎ yǔsǎn	one umbrella
21.	kàn	to read, to look at, to visit

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

Colors: Adjectival verbs of color behave somewhat differently than other adjectival verbs, such as *guì* and *dà*. To say in Chinese that something is a certain color, such as blue, you say that it is "a blue one."

Zhèige huāpíng shi lánde.	This vase is blue.
Nèiběn shū shi hēide.	That book is black.

Adjectival verbs: As you learned in BIO, adjectival verbs are state verbs and as such can be made negative only with *bù*. If the marker *le* is used in a sentence whose verb is adjectival, the marker is new-situation *le*. (See BIO, Unit 8, Reference Notes on Nos. 7-8.)

Zuòtiān wǒ kànle hěn duō huāpíng. Dōu bú guì.	Yesterday I saw a lot of vases. None of them were expensive.
Nǐde háizi hěn gāo le!	Your son is tall now!

Like many other state verbs, adjectival verbs may become process verbs. When this happens, the verb meaning is often changed. (See BIO, Unit 8, Reference Notes on No. 9.)

Wǒde yǔsǎn jiù le.	My umbrella *has become* old.
Tiān hēi le.	The sky *has become* black (has darkened).

Jiù is the verb "to be old," "to be used," "to be worn," as opposed to *xīn*, "to be new." *Jiù* is not used to mean old in years, or aged.*

Ǎi is the verb "to be short (in stature)," as opposed to *gāo*, "to be tall." *Ǎi* is not used to mean "short in length."**

Nánkàn, "to be ugly," literally, "to be hard to look at": This is a very blunt way to describe unattractiveness.

---

*The verb *lǎo* means "to be old in years." *Niánqīng* means "to be young."
**The verb *duǎn* means "to be short in length." *Cháng* means "to be long."

VOCABULARY BOOSTER

Colors

What color paper do you want?	Nǐ yào shénme yánsède zhǐ?
I want ______________.	Wǒ yào ____________de.

beige	mǐhuáng
black	hēi
blue	lán
brown	zōngsè kāfēisè hèsè shēn huáng
gold	jīnhuáng
gray	huī
green	lǜ
orange	júhuáng júhóng
pink	fěnhóng
purple	zǐ
red	hóng
silver	yínbái
white	bái
yellow	huáng
light blue	qiǎn lán
light green	qiǎn lǜ
light red	qiǎn hóng
dark blue	shēn lán
dark green	shēn lǜ
dark red	shēn hóng

Different kinds of

lán	tiānlán ("sky blue") hǎilán ("sea blue")
lǜ	cǎolǜ ("grass green") píngguǒlǜ ("apple green") cuìlǜ ("emerald green") mòlǜ ("ink green," "blackish green")
hóng	dàhóng ("bright red," "scarlet") zhūhóng ("vermilion") méiguihóng ("rose red")

And one more interesting Chinese color: qīng, "green," "blue," "black"

DRILLS

A. Expansion Drill

(Here is a new expression you will need in this exercise: nèibǎ yǔsǎn, "that umbrella")

1.	Speaker: Qǐng ni gěi wo nèige huāpíng. (Please give me that vase.)	You: Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan nèige huāpíng. (Please give me that vase to look at.)
2.	Qǐng ni gěi wo nèige lǜde.	Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan nèige lǜde.
3.	Qǐng ni gěi wo nèibǎ yǔsǎn.	Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan nèibǎ yǔsǎn.
4.	Qǐng ni gěi wo nèibǎ dàde.	Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan nèibǎ dàde.
5.	Qǐng ni gěi wo nèiběn zìdiǎn.	Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan nèiběn zìdiǎn.
6.	Qǐng ni gěi wo nèiběn guìde.	Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan nèiběn guìde.
7.	Qǐng ni gěi wo nèizhāng dìtú.	Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan nèizhāng dìtú.

B. Transformation and Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan nèi liǎngge lánde. (Please give me those two blue ones to look at.)	You: Nèi liǎngge lánde dōu gěi wo kànkan, hǎo ma? (Give me both of those blue ones to look at. All right?)
2.	Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan nèi liǎngge hóngde.	Nèi liǎngge hóngde dōu gěi wo kànkan, hǎo ma?
3.	Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan nèi liǎngge báide.	Nèi liǎngge báide dōu gěi wo kànkan, hǎo ma?
4.	Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan nèi liǎngge dàde.	Nèi liǎngge dàde dōu gěi wo kànkan, hǎo ma?
5.	Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan nèi liǎngge xiǎode.	Nèi liǎngge xiǎode dōu gěi wo kànkan, hǎo ma?
6.	Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan nèi liǎngge guìde.	Nèi liǎngge guìde dōu gěi wo kànkan, hǎo ma?

7.	Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan něi liǎngge piányide.	Nèi liǎngge piányide dōu gěi wo kànkan, hǎo ma?

C. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan. (cues) lán, bái (Please give it to me to look at.)	You: Něige? Nèige lánde, háishi nèige báide? (Which one? That blue one or that white one?)
2.	Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan. lán, lǜ	Něige? Nèige lánde, háishi nèige lǜde?
3.	Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan. hóng, huáng	Něige? Nèige hóngde, háishi nèige huángde?
4.	Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan. dà, xiǎo	Něige? Nèige dàde, háishi nèige xiǎode?
5.	Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan. guì, piányi	Něige? Nèige guìde, háishi nèige piányide?
6.	Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan. huāpíng, yǔsǎn	Něige? Nèige huāpíng, háishi nèige yǔsǎn?
7.	Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan. dìtú, zìdiǎn	Něige? Nèige dìtú, háishi nèige zìdiǎn?

D. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Lánde tài guì le. (cue) hóng (The blue one is too expensive.)	You: Lánde tài guì le. Wǒ mǎi hóngde ba. (The blue one is too expensive. I'll buy the red one, I guess.)
2.	Lǜde tài guì le. bái	Lǜde tài guì le. Wǒ mǎi báide ba.
3.	Dàde tài guì le. xiǎo	Dàde tài guì le. Wǒ mǎi xiǎode ba.
4.	Dà píngguǒ tài guì le. xiǎo píngguǒ	Dà píngguǒ tài guì le. Wǒ mǎi xiǎo píngguǒ ba.
5.	Nèige tài guì le. zhèige	Nèige tài guì le. Wǒ mǎi zhèige ba.

6.	Zhèige tài guì le.	nèige	Zhèige tài guì le. Wǒ mǎi nèige ba.
7.	Huángde tài guì le.	lǜ	Huángde tài guì le. Wǒ mǎi lǜde ba.

E. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Hóngde piányi. (The red one is cheaper.)	You: Hóngde piányi yìdiǎnr. Wǒ mǎi hóngde ba. (The red one is a little cheaper. I'll buy the red one, I guess.)
2.	Lánde piányi.	Lánde piányi yìdiǎnr. Wǒ mǎi lánde ba.
3.	Huángde piányi.	Huángde piányi yìdiǎnr. Wǒ mǎi huángde ba.
4.	Xiǎode piányi.	Xiǎode piányi yìdiǎnr. Wǒ mǎi xiǎode ba.
5.	Lǜde piányi.	Lǜde piányi yìdiǎnr. Wǒ mǎi lǜde ba.
6.	Báide piányi.	Báide piányi yìdiǎnr. Wǒ mǎi báide ba.
7.	Zhèige piányi.	Zhèige piányi yìdiǎnr. Wǒ mǎi zhèige ba.

F. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Zhèi liǎngběn shū shì wǒde. (cue) hǎo (These two books are mine.)	You: Zhèi liǎngběn shū, něiběn hǎo? (Which of these two books is better?)
2.	Zhèi liǎngkuài féizào shì wǒde. piányi	Zhèi liǎngkuài féizào, něikuài piányi?
3.	Zhèi liǎngzhāng dìtú shì wǒde. guì	Zhèi liǎngzhāng dìtú, něizhāng guì?
4.	Zhèi liǎngbǎ yǔsǎn shì wǒde. hǎokàn	Zhèi liǎngbǎ yǔsǎn, něibǎ hǎokàn?

5.	Zhèi liăngge xuésheng shì wŏde. hăo	Zhèi liăngge xuésheng, nĕige hăo?
6.	Zhèi liăngbĕn zìdiăn shì wŏde. hăo	Zhèi liăngbĕn zìdiăn, nĕibĕn hăo?
7.	Zhèi liăngfèn bào shì wŏde. guì	Zhèi liăngfèn bào, nĕifèn guì?

G. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Zhèige tài guì le. (This one is too expensive.)	You: Zhèige tài guì le. Nĭ yŏu piányi yìdiănrde ma? (This one is too expensive. Do you have one a little cheaper?)
2.	Zhèibĕn tài xiăo le.	Zhèibĕn tài xiăo le. Nĭ yŏu dà yìdiănrde ma?
3.	Zhèizhāng tài dà le.	Zhèizhāng tài dà le. Nĭ yŏu xiăo yìdiănrde ma?
4.	Zhèipíng tài xiăo le.	Zhèipíng tài xiăo le. Nĭ yŏu dà yìdiănrde ma?
5.	Zhèige tài dà le.	Zhèige tài dà le. Nĭ yŏu xiăo yìdiănrde ma?
6.	Zhèibă tài guì le.	Zhèibă tài guì le. Nĭ yŏu piányi yìdiănrde ma?
7.	Zhèikuài tài dà le.	Zhèikuài tài dà le. Nĭ yŏu xiăo yìdiănrde ma?

H. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Zhèige dàde hăokàn ma? (Is this large one nice looking?)	You: Zhèige dàde zhēn hăokàn. (This large one is really nice looking.)
2.	Nèige xiăode hăokàn ma?	Nèige xiăode zhēn hăokàn.
3.	Zhèige lánde guì ma?	Zhèige lánde zhēn guì.
4.	Nèibă yŭsăn hăokàn ma?	Nèibă yŭsăn zhēn hăokàn.

5.	Zhèige huāpíng dà ma?	Zhèige huāpíng zhēn dà.
6.	Nèizhāng Zhōngguo dìtú hǎokàn ma?	Nèizhāng Zhōngguo dìtú zhēn hǎokàn.
7.	Zhèiběn zìdiǎn guì ma?	Zhèiběn zìdiǎn zhēn guì.

I. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Něige hǎokàn? (Which one is better looking?)	You: Zhèige hǎokàn yìdiǎnr. (This one is a little better looking.)
OR	Nèige hǎokàn ma? (Is that one nice looking?)	Nèige zhēn hǎokàn. (That one is really nice looking.)
2.	Něiběn piányi?	Zhèiběn piányi yìdiǎnr.
3.	Nèiběn piányi ma?	Nèiběn zhēn piányi.
4.	Něibǎ guì?	Zhèibǎ guì yìdiǎnr.
5.	Nèibǎ dàde guì ma?	Nèibǎ dàde zhēn guì.
6.	Něizhāng hǎo?	Zhèizhāng hǎo yìdiǎnr.

J. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Nín kàn zhèige dàde zěnmeyàng? Zhēn hǎo. (What do you think of this large one? It's really nice.)	You: Hǎo, wǒ mǎi dàde. (Okay, I'll buy the large one.)
2.	Nín kàn nèige lánde zěnmeyàng? Zhēn hǎo.	Hǎo, wǒ mǎi lánde.
3.	Nín kàn zhèige hóngde zěnmeyàng? Zhēn hǎo.	Hǎo, wǒ mǎi hóngde.
4.	Nín kàn nèige xiǎode zěnmeyàng? Zhēn hǎokàn.	Hǎo, wǒ mǎi xiǎode.

5.	Nín kàn zhèiběn zázhì zěnmeyàng? Zhēn hǎokàn.	Hǎo, wǒ mǎi zhèiběn.
6.	Nín kàn nèige huāpíng zěnmeyàng? Zhēn hǎo.	Hǎo, wǒ mǎi nèige.
7.	Nín kàn zhèibǎ yǔsǎn zěnmeyàng? Zhēn hǎo.	Hǎo, wǒ mǎi zhèibǎ.

K. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Nín yào jǐge? (How many do you want?)	(cue) èr	You: Qǐng gěi wǒ liǎngge ba. (How about giving me two, please.)
2.	Nín yào jǐběn?	sì	Qǐng gěi wǒ sìběn ba.
3.	Nín yào jǐfèn?	yī	Qǐng gěi wǒ yífèn ba.
4.	Nín yào jǐzhāng?	shí	Qǐng gěi wǒ shízhāng ba.
5.	Nín yào jǐbǎ?	èr	Qǐng gěi wǒ liǎngbǎ ba.
6.	Nín yào jǐpíng?	sān	Qǐng gěi wǒ sānpíng ba.
7.	Nín yào jǐkuài?	wǔ	Qǐng gěi wǒ wǔkuài ba.

UNIT 4

REFERENCE LIST

(in Taipei)

1.	A:	Nĭ jiālide dōngxi dōu dào le ma?	Have all your household things arrived?
	B:	Yŏude dào le, yŏude hái méi dào.	Some have arrived, and some haven't arrived yet.
2.	C:	Zhèxie zázhì nĭ kàn le ma?	Have you read these magazines?
	D:	Zhèxie zázhì, yŏude wŏ kàn le, yŏude wŏ hái méi kàn.	Some of these magazines I've read, and some I haven't read yet.
3.	B:	Zuótiān wŏ măile yìdiăn pánziwăn.	Yesterday I bought some dishes.
4.	*A:	Nín măi shénme le?	What did you buy?
	B:	Wŏ măi fànwăn le.	I bought rice bowls.
5.	A:	Nĭ măile duōshao?	How many did you buy?
	B:	Wŏ măile shíge fànwăn, shíge dà pánzi.	I bought ten rice bowls and ten large plates.
6.	A:	Nàxie pánziwăn shi shénme yánsède?	What color are those dishes?
	B:	Shi lánde.	They're blue ones.
	A:	À, wŏ yĕ xĭhuan lánde.	Oh, I like blue ones too.
7.	**A:	Shi zài shénme dìfang măide?	Where were they bought?
	B:	Shi zài Dìyī Gōngsī măide.	They were bought at the First Company.
8.	B:	Tāmen màide dōngxi zhēn hăo.	The things they sell are really nice.
9.	B:	Tāmen màide pánziwăn, yŏude zhēn hăokàn. Kĕshi guì yìdiăn.	Some of the dishes they sell are really beautiful. But they are a little expensive.
10.	B:	Wŏ măide nàxie pánziwăn dōu bú tài guì. Guìde wŏ méi măi.	All those dishes I bought were not too expensive. I didn't buy the expensive ones.

---

*This exchange occurs on the P-1 tape only.

**This exchange does not occur until No. 11 on the P-1 tape.

11.	B:	Nĭde zhège chábēi hĕn hăo. Shi zài shénme dìfang măide?	This teacup of yours is very nice. Where was it bought?
	A:	Yĕ shi zài Dìyī Gōngsī măide.	It was bought at the First Company too.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

12.	yíge bīngxiāng	one refrigerator
13.	yìzhāng dìtăn	one rug
14.	yíge shūjiàzi	one bookcase
15.	yìbă yĭzi	one chair
16.	yìzhāng zhuōzi	one table

Writing auspicious characters on red paper at Chinese New Year's. People buy these decorations to hang on doors.

VOCABULARY

à	Oh!
bīngxiāng	refrigerator
chábēi (yíge)	teacup
dìtǎn (yìzhāng)	rug
Dìyī Gōngsī	the First Company (department store in Taipei)
dōngxi	thing
fànwǎn	rice bowl
gōngsī	company
kěshi	but
nèixie (nàxie)	those
pánzi	plate
pánziwǎn	dishes
shūjiàzi	bookcase
wǎn	bowl
-xie (-xiē)	(counter for an indefinite plural number of things)
xǐhuan	to like
yánsè	color
yǐzi (yìbǎ)	chair
yǒude	some
zhèixie (zhèxie)	these
zhuōzi (yìzhāng)	table

(introduced on P-2 tape)

cháyè	tea (literally, "tea leaves")

REFERENCE NOTES

1.	A:	Nǐ jiālide dōngxi dōu dào le ma?	Have all your household things arrived?
	B:	Yǒude dào le, yǒude hái méi dào.	Some have arrived, and some haven't arrived yet.
2.	C:	Zhèxie zázhì, nǐ kàn le ma?	Have you read these magazines?
	D:	Zhèxie zázhì, yǒude wǒ kàn le, yǒude wǒ hái méi kàn.	Some of these magazines I've read, and some I haven't read yet.

Notes on Nos. 1-2

Yǒude: Like its English equivalent "some," yǒude may be used either with the noun it modifies, as in yǒude dōngxi, "some things," or by itself, when the noun it modifies is obvious from the context.

Yǒude	dōngxi	dào le.	(Some	things	have arrived.)
Yǒude		dào le.	(Some		have arrived.)

Neither yǒude nor a noun modified by that word can follow the verb. When yǒude is the grammatical object of the verb, it must precede the subject, in topic position.

Yǒude	wǒ	mài le.
(Some	I	sold.)

The counter -xie is added to the specifiers zhè, "this," and nà, "that," to make the plural specifiers zhèxie, "these," and nàxie, "those." These plural specifiers are used only when the number of items is not mentioned. "These apples" is zhèxie píngguǒ, but "these TWO apples" is zhè liǎngge píngguǒ, without the -xie.

In zhèxie zázhì, -xie acts as a counter for an indefinite number of items. You might think of the phrase as meaning "a bunch of."

zhè	-běn	zázhì	(this magazine)
zhè	-xie	zázhì	(that bunch of/those magazines)

Zhèxie zázhì, yǒude...: In the last sentence in exchange 2, *yǒude* is the topic of *wǒ kàn le* and *wǒ hái méi kàn*. *Zhèxie zázhì*, "these magazines," is the topic of the whole sentence, naming the set of items from which "some" were selected.

Zhèxie zázhì,	yǒude	wǒ kàn le....
([Of] *these magazines*,	*some*	I have read....)

"*Some of these magazines*
I've read...."

3.	B:	Zuótiān wǒ mǎile yìdiǎn pánziwǎn.	Yesterday I bought some dishes.
4.	A:	Nǐn mǎi shénme le?	What did you buy?
	B:	Wǒ mǎi fànwǎn le.	I bought rice bowls.
5.	A:	Nǐ mǎile duōshao?	How many did you buy?
	B:	Wǒ mǎile shíge fànwǎn, shíge dà pánzi.	I bought ten rice bowls and ten large plates.

Notes on Nos. 3-5

The noun *zuótiān*, "yesterday," is a time word. Time words are placed before or after the subject but always before the verb. In No. 3, *zuótiān* appears in the topic position, before the subject, instead of directly before the verb.

Adverbs such as *yě*, "also"; *hái*, "still"; *zhǐ*, "only"; and *jiù*, "only" also precede verbs. But these words cannot be placed before the subject.

Tā zuótiān bú zài.	He wasn't here yesterday.
Zuótiān wǒ méi kàn bào.	I didn't read the paper yesterday.
Tā yě lái.	He is also coming.

Le: The sentences in No. 3 and No. 5 focus on how many items the sentence object refers to. Such sentences have AMOUNT OBJECTS. In sentences with amount objects, completion *le* immediately follows the verb. This rule applies likewise to duration sentences, which involve AMOUNTS of time.

Wǒ mǎi*le* shíge fànwǎn.	I bought ten rice bowls.
Wǒ zhù*le* shíge yuè.	I stayed ten months.

New-situation *le* may be added to both examples, with the meaning "so far."

Wǒ mǎile shíge fànfǎn *le*.	I have bought ten rice bowls (so far).
Wǒ zhùle shíge yuè *le*.	I have stayed ten months (so far).

The sentences in exchange 4 focus on WHAT the sentence object refers to, not on how many. Such sentences have NONAMOUNT OBJECTS. In sentences with nonamount objects, completion *le* follows the object at the end of the sentence.

Wǒ mǎi			fànwǎn	*le*.	(I bought rice bowls.)
Wǒ mǎi	-*le*	shíge	fànwǎn.		(I bought ten rice bowls.)

Duōshao, or *jǐge*, and *yìdiǎn* are amount objects, since they ask or answer "how many."

Nǐ mǎi*le* duōshao/jǐge?	How many did you buy?
Wǒ mǎi*le* yìdiǎn.	I bought a little.

Shénme is a nonamount object, since it asks "what."

Nǐ mǎi shénme *le*?	What did you buy?

To some speakers, the question and answer *Nǐ mǎile shénme? Wǒ mǎile fànwǎn* are acceptable.

Variation in speech: Individual variations in language usage among speakers of Chinese always seem to be a headache for students. You may have already heard your teachers say "This way is right, but that way is right too." In writing this course, the practice has been not to give only one "right" way to say things but rather to point out major differences in usage that you are likely to find.

Chinese speakers with different backgrounds and experience frequently have varying opinions about what is acceptable speech, sometimes feeling quite strongly about what is "correct." There will inevitably be instances when even two of your teachers disagree about the acceptable way to express a thought. In such cases, the social differences in the situations which the teachers are envisioning would probably make different speech appropriate in each situation.

Rather than trying to find "the right way" to say something, try to associate the different ways of expressing a thought with their social contexts. AND, adjust your speech to the people you are speaking with. In this way, you will learn as much as possible, and your speech will be accepted by a wide range of people.

6.	A:	Nàxie pánziwǎn shi shénme yánsède?	What color are those dishes?
	B:	Shi lánde.	They're blue ones.
	A:	À, wǒ yě xǐhuan lánde.	Oh, I like blue ones too.

Note on No. 6

Shi lánde: In English, you would probably describe the color of the dishes by saying "They're blue." In Chinese, you say "They're blue ones," shi lánde, turning the color word into a noun by adding the marker -de. Notice that the question uses the same pattern:

Nàxie pánziwǎn	shi	shénme yánsè	-de?
(Those dishes	are	what color	ones?)

7.	A:	Shi zài shénme dìfang mǎide?	Where were they bought?
	B:	Shi zài Dìyī Gōngsī mǎide.	They were bought at the First Company.

Notes on No. 7

Shénme dìfang means, literally, "what place." This expression is often used instead of nǎr or nǎli when asking about a specific location.

Shi zài shénme dìfang mǎide? is translated into English with a passive verb: "were bought." The sentence must be translated this way because no subject is mentioned--the sentence does not state who did the buying. In Chinese, the verb form remains the same whether or not the subject is mentioned.

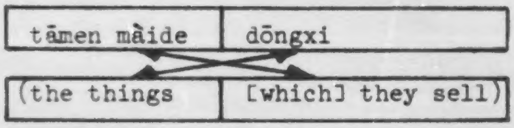
Wǒ	shi	zài	Dìyī Gōngsī	mǎide	chábēi.	(I bought the cups at the First Company.)
	Shi	zài	Dìyī Gōngsī	mǎide.		(They were bought at the First Company.)
Chábēi	shi	zài	Dìyī Gōngsī	mǎide.		(The cups were bought at the First Company.)

71

8.	B:	Tāmen màide dōngxi zhēn hǎo.	The things they sell are really nice.

Note on No. 8

Tāmen màide dōngxi: This noun phrase consists of a noun, dōngxi, "things," preceded by the clause which modifies it, tāmen màide, "(which) they sell."



In Chinese, modifying clauses, like all other modifiers, precede the element which is modified. In English, modifying clauses follow the modified element, often beginning with "who," "which," "that," and so on.

Tā shuōde huà wǒ dōu bù dǒng.	I don't understand anything he says.
Tā xiěde zì zhēn hǎokàn.	The characters he writes are really beautiful.
Nǐ mǎide píngguǒ hěn piányi.	The apples that you bought are really cheap.
Tā xiěde shū wǒ hěn xiǎng kàn.	I really want to read the book which he wrote.

9.	B:	Tāmen màide pánziwǎn, yǒude zhēn hǎokàn. Kěshi guì yìdiǎn.	Some of the dishes they sell are really beautiful. But they are a little expensive.

10.	B:	Wǒ mǎide nàxie pánziwǎn dōu bú tài guì. Guìde wǒ méi mǎi.	All those dishes I bought were not too expensive. I didn't buy the expensive ones.
11.	B:	Nǐde zhège chábēi hěn hǎo. Shi zài shénme dìfang mǎide?	This teacup of yours is very nice. Where was it bought?
	A:	Yě shi zài Dìyī Gōngsī mǎide.	It was bought at the First Company too.

Note on Nos. 10-11

Nǐde zhège chábēi, wǒ mǎide nàxie pánziwǎn: Possessives always precede specifiers in Chinese, and modifying clauses usually precede specifiers. This is the opposite of English word order for the same elements. Compare:

nǐde	zhège	chábēi	
	(this	teacup	of yours)

wǒ mǎide	nàxie	pánziwǎn	
	(those	dishes	[which] I bought)

上海友誼商
ANGHAI FRIENDSHIP STORE

The Shànghǎi Friendship Store features Chinese antiques.
(NOTE: Arabic numerals are in general use throughout China.)

VOCABULARY BOOSTER

Things in a Classroom

calendar	by the day	rìlì
	by the month	yuèlì
	by the year	niánlì
chair		yĭzi
chalk		fĕnbĭ
chalkboard		hēibăn
chalkboard eraser		(hēi)băncā(r)
desk		xiĕzìtái, shūzhuō(r)
desk lamp		táidēng
eraser (pencil)		xiàngpí
globe		dìqiúyí
map		dìtú
notebook (bound pages)		bĭjìbĕn(r)
notebook (loose-leaf)		huóyejiāzi
notes		bĭjì
pencil sharpener		zhuànbĭdāo
ruler		chĭzi
stapler		dìngshūjī
student		xuésheng
table		zhuōzi
teacher		lăoshī
textbook		kèbĕn(r) jiàokēshū
typewriter		dăzìjī

DRILLS

A. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Nèige dōngxi dào le ma? (Has that thing arrived?)	You: Nèixie dōngxi dōu dào le ma? (Have all those things arrived?)
2.	Nèibǎ yǐzi lái le ma?	Nèixie yǐzi dōu lái le ma?
3.	Nèige shūjiàzi dào le ma?	Nèixie shūjiàzi dōu dào le ma?
4.	Nèiběn shū dào le ma?	Nèixie shū dōu dào le ma?
5.	Nèizhāng dìtú lái le ma?	Nèixie dìtú dōu lái le ma?
6.	Nèiběn zìdiǎn dào le ma?	Nèixie zìdiǎn dōu dào le ma?
7.	Nèiběn zázhì lái le ma?	Nèixie zázhì dōu lái le ma?

B. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Dàde wǒ méi mǎi. (I didn't buy the big ones.)	You: Dàde wǒ dōu méi mǎi. (I didn't buy any of the big ones.)
2.	Nèixie shū wǒ méi kàn.	Nèixie shū wǒ dōu méi kàn.
3.	Lánde wǒ méi mǎi.	Lánde wǒ dōu méi mǎi.
4.	Nèixie shū wǒ méi niàn.	Nèixie shū wǒ dōu méi niàn.
5.	Xiǎode wǒ méi mài.	Xiǎode wǒ dōu méi mài.
6.	Zhèixie dìtǎn wǒ méi mǎi.	Zhèixie dìtǎn wǒ dōu méi mǎi.
7.	Dà zhuōzi wǒ méi mǎi.	Dà zhuōzi wǒ dōu méi mǎi.

C. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Nǐ jiālide dōngxi dōu dào le ma? (Have all your household things arrived?)	You: Yǒude dào le, yǒude hái méi dào. (Some have arrived, and some haven't arrived yet.)

2. Nèixie zázhì nǐ dōu kàn le ma?	Yǒude kàn le, yǒude hái méi kàn.
3. Nǐde péngyou dōu lái le ma?	Yǒude lái le, yǒude hái méi lái.
4. Nèixie dìtǎn nǐ dōu mài le ma?	Yǒude mài le, yǒude hái méi mài.
5. Zhèixie shū nǐ dōu niàn le ma?	Yǒude niàn le, yǒude hái méi niàn.
6. Nǐmen háizi dōu zǒu le ma?	Yǒude zǒu le, yǒude hái méi zǒu.
7. Nèixie shūjiàzi nǐ dōu mài le ma?	Yǒude mài le, yǒude hái méi mài.

D. Response Drill

1. Speaker: Nǐ jiālide dōngxi dōu dào le ma? (cue) dōu (Have all your household things arrived?)	You: Dōu dào le. (All of them have arrived.)
OR Nèixie zázhì nǐ dōu kàn le ma? (cue) yǒude (Have you looked at all those magazines?)	Yǒude kàn le, yǒude hái méi kàn. (Some of them I've looked at, and some of them I haven't looked at yet.)
2. Nèixie bào nǐ dōu kàn le ma? dōu	Dōu kàn le.
3. Nèi sānběn shū nǐ dōu niàn le ma? dōu	Dōu niàn le.
4. Nǐ péngyou dōu lái le ma? yǒude	Yǒude lái le, yǒude hái méi lái.
5. Zhuōzi, yǐzi dōu mǎi le ma? dōu	Dōu mǎi le.
6. Zhèngzhixué nǐ dōu niàn le ma? yǒude	Yǒude niàn le, yǒude hái méi niàn.

E. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Tā mǎi shénme le? (cue) pánziwǎn (What did he buy?)	You: Tā mǎi pánziwǎn le. (He bought dishes.)
2.	Wáng Tóngzhì mǎi shénme le? yǔsǎn	Wáng Tóngzhì mǎi yǔsǎn le.
3.	Nǐ mǎi shénme le? dìtǎn	Wo mǎi dìtǎn le.
4.	Hú Tóngzhì mǎi shénme le? zhuōzi	Hú Tóngzhì mǎi zhuōzi le.
5.	Tā dìdi mǎi shénme le? huāpíng	Tā dìdi mǎi huāpíng le.
6.	Tā mǔqin mǎi shénme le? yǐzi	Tā mǔqin mǎi yǐzi le.
7.	Tā àiren mǎi shénme le? shūjiàzi	Tā àiren mǎi shūjiàzi le.

F. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Zhāng Tàitai mǎi shénme le? (cue) shíge fànwǎn (What did Mrs. Zhāng buy?)	You: Zhāng Tàitai mǎile shíge fànwǎn. (Mrs. Zhāng bought ten rice bowls.)
2.	Wáng Tóngzhì mǎi shénme le? liǎngbǎ yǐzi	Wáng Tóngzhì mǎile liǎngbǎ yǐzi.
3.	Hú Xiānsheng mǎi shénme le? yìzhāng zhuōzi	Hú Xiānsheng mǎile yìzhāng zhuōzi.
4.	Lǐ Xiānsheng mǎi shénme le? yíge shūjiàzi	Lǐ Xiānsheng mǎile yíge shūjiàzi.
5.	Lǐ Tàitai mǎi shénme le? yìzhāng dìtǎn	Lǐ Tàitai mǎile yìzhāng dìtǎn.
6.	Hú Tàitai mǎi shénme le? sìge chábēi	Hú Tàitai mǎile sìge chábēi.
7.	Wáng Xiānsheng mǎi shénme le? sānge pánzi	Wáng Xiānsheng mǎile sānge pánzi.

G. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Tā mǎi dà pánzi le. (cue) duōshao (He bought large dishes.)	You: Tā mǎile duōshao dà pánzi? (How many large dishes did he buy?)
OR	Tā mǎi píngguǒ le. (cue) jǐ (He bought apples.)	Tā mǎile jǐge píngguǒ? (How many apples did he buy?)
2.	Wáng Tàitai mǎi huāpíng le. jǐ	Wáng Tàitai mǎile jǐge huāpíng?
3.	Zhāng Xiānsheng mǎi shūjiàzi le. duōshao	Zhāng Xiānsheng mǎile duōshao shūjiàzi?
4.	Hú Tàitai mǎi yǐzi le. jǐ	Hú Tàitai mǎile jǐbǎ yǐzi?
5.	Zhāng Tàitai mǎi féizào le. duōshao	Zhāng Tàitai mǎile duōshao féizào?
6.	Wǔ Tàitai mǎi dìtǎn le. jǐ	Wǔ Tàitai mǎile jǐzhāng dìtǎn?

H. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Tā mǎi shénme le ? (cue) fànwǎn (What did he buy?)	You: Tā mǎi fànwǎn le. (He bought rice bowls.)
OR	Tā mǎi shénme le? (cue) shíge fànwǎn (What did he buy?)	Tā mǎile shíge fànwǎn. (He bought ten rice bowls.)
2.	Tā mǎi shénme le? yìdiǎnr pánziwǎn	Tā mǎile yìdiǎnr pánziwǎn.
3.	Wáng Tóngzhì mǎi shénme le? yǔsǎn	Wáng Tóngzhì mǎi yǔsǎn le.
4.	Wáng Tóngzhì mǎi shénme le? liǎngbǎ yǐzi	Wáng Tóngzhì mǎile liǎngbǎ yǐzi.
5.	Tā mǎi shénme le? sìzhāng dìtǎn	Tā mǎile sìzhāng dìtǎn.
6.	Hú Tóngzhì mǎi shénme le? yìdiǎn júzi	Hú Tóngzhì mǎile yìdiǎn júzi.

I. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Nèixie shì shénme yánsède? (cue) lán (What color are those?)	You: Nèixie shì lánde. (Those are blue.)
2.	Dìtǎn shì shénme yánsè de? hóng	Dìtǎn shì hóngde.
3.	Shūjiàzi shì shénme yánsède? huáng	Shūjiàzi shì huángde.
4.	Nèibǎ yǐzi shì shénme yánsède? bái	Nèibǎ yǐzi shì báide.
5.	Nǐde zhuōzi shì shénme yánsède? lǜ	Wǒde zhuōzi shì lǜde.
6.	Tāde dìtǎn shì shénme yánsède? hóng	Tāde dìtǎn shì hóngde.
7.	Dàde shì shénme yánsède? lán	Dàde shì lánde.

J. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Pánzi shì shénme yánsède? (cue) that (What color is the plate [are the plates]?)	You: Nèige pánzi shì shénme yánsède? (What color is that plate?)
2.	Zhuōzi shì shénme yánsède? those	Nèixie zhuōzi shì shénme yánsède?
3.	Yǐzi shì shénme yánsède? this	Zhèibǎ yǐzi shì shénme yánsède?
4.	Shūjiàzi shì shénme yánsède? these	Zhèixie shūjiàzi shì shénme yánsède?
5.	Dìtǎn shì shénme yánsède? that	Nèizhāng dìtǎn shì shénme yánsède?
6.	Huāpíng shì shénme yánsède? those	Nèixie huāpíng shì shénme yánsède?

7.	Yǔsǎn shì shénme yánsède?	this	Zhèibǎ yǔsǎn shì shénme yánsède?

K. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Shì Zhōngguo shū. (It's a Chinese book.)	(cue) mǎi	You: Tā mǎide shū shi Zhōngguo shū. (The book he bought [is buying] is a Chinese book.)
2.	Shì Měiguo zhuōzi.	xǐhuan	Tā xǐhuande zhuōzi shi Měiguo zhuōzi.
3.	Shì Rìběn shūjiàzi.	mài	Tā màide shūjiàzi shi Rìběn shūjiàzi.
4.	Shì Yīngguo zázhì.	kàn	Tā kànde zázhì shi Yīngguo zázhì.
5.	Shì Zhōngguo pánzi.	xǐhuan	Tā xǐhuande pánzi shi Zhōngguo pánzi.
6.	Shì Fàguo dìtǎn.	mǎi	Tā mǎide dìtǎn shi Fàguo dìtǎn.
7.	Shì Qīngdǎo píjiǔ.	mǎi	Tā mǎide píjiǔ shi Qīngdǎo píjiǔ.

L. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Tā màide chábēi zhēn guì. (The teacups he sells are really expensive.)	You: Tā màide chábēi shi guìde. (The teacups he sells are expensive ones.)
2.	Tā mǎide féizào zhēn hǎo.	Tā mǎide féizào shi hǎode.
3.	Tā màide dìtǎn zhēn dà.	Tā màide dìtǎn shi dàde.
4.	Tā mǎide dìtǎn zhēn guì.	Tā mǎide dìtǎn shi guìde.
5.	Tā mǎide yǐzi zhēn xiǎo.	Tā mǎide yǐzi shi xiǎode.
6.	Tā màide pánzi zhēn piányi.	Tā màide pánzi shi piányide.
7.	Tā mǎide fànwǎn zhēn hǎo.	Tā mǎide fànwǎn shi hǎode.

M. Transformation and Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Tā măi shū le. (cue) piányi (He bought books.)	You: Tā măide shū zhēn piányi. (The books he bought are really cheap.)
OR	Tā măi shū le. (cue) piányide (He bought books.)	Tā măide shū shi piányide. (The books he bought are cheap ones.)
2.	Tā kàn shū le. Zhōngguo shū	Tā kànde shū shi Zhōngguo shū.
3.	Zhào Xiānsheng kàn dìtú le. dà	Zhào Xiānsheng kànde dìtú zhēn dà.
4.	Zhōu Tàitai măi dìtăn le. guìde	Zhōu Tàitai măide dìtăn shì guìde.
5.	Zhāng Xiānsheng măi zhuōzi le. Mĕiguo zhuōzi	Zhāng Xiānsheng măide zhuōzi shi Mĕiguo zhuōzi.
6.	Tā măi shūjiàzi le. hăo	Tā măide shūjiàzi zhēn hăo.

N. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Tāmen măide pánziwăn zhēn hăokàn. (cue) guì (The dishes they bought [are buying] are really beautiful.)	You: Tāmen măide pánziwăn zhēn hăokàn, kĕshi guì yìdiăn. (The dishes they bought [are buying] are really beautiful, but they are a bit expensive.)
2.	Zhāng Xiānsheng măide yŭsăn zhēn hăokàn. xiăo	Zhāng Xiānsheng măide yŭsăn zhèn hăokàn, kĕshi xiăo yìdiăn.
3.	Wáng Tàitai măide dìtăn hĕn hăokàn. dà	Wáng Tàitai măide dìtăn hĕn hăokàn, kĕshi dà yìdiăn.
4.	Wŏmen măide shūjiàzi bù hăokàn. piányi	Wŏmen măide shūjiàzi bù hăokàn, kĕshi piányi yìdiăn.
5.	Hú Xiānsheng măide chábēi zhēn hăokàn. guì	Hú Xiānsheng măide chábēi zhēn hăokàn, kĕshi guì yìdiăn.
6.	Tā màide huāpíng bù hăokàn. piányi	Tā màide huāpíng bù hăokàn, kĕshi piányi yìdiăn.
7.	Lĭ Tàitai măide zhuōzi hĕn hăokàn. guì	Lĭ Tàitai măide zhuōzi hĕn hăokàn, kĕshi guì yìdiăn.

O. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Tāde pánziwǎn tài guì. (His dishes are too expensive.)	You: Tāde nèixie pánziwǎn dōu bú tài guì. (All those dishes of his are not too expensive.)
2.	Tāde zhuōzi tài dà.	Tāde nèixie zhuōzi dōu bú tài dà.
3.	Wǒde yǐzi tài piányi.	Wǒde nèixie yǐzi dōu bú tài piányi.
4.	Wáng Xiānshengde dìtǎn tài guì.	Wáng Xiānshengde nèixie dìtǎn dōu bú tài guì.
5.	Wáng Tàitaide yǔsǎn tài hǎo.	Wáng Tàitaide nèixie yǔsǎn dōu bú tài hǎo.
6.	Hú Tàitaide shūjiàzi tài xiǎo.	Hú Tàitaide nèixie shūjiàzi dōu bú tài xiǎo.
7.	Tāde huāpíng tài hǎokàn.	Tāde nèixie huāpíng dōu bú tài hǎokàn.

P. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Nǐde chábēi hěn hǎo. (Your teacup is very nice.)	You: Nǐde zhèige chábēi hěn hǎo. Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide? (This teacup of yours is very nice. Where did you buy it?)
2.	Tāde pánzi hěn hǎo.	Tāde zhèige pánzi hěn hǎo. Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?
3.	Zhāng Tóngzhìde zhuōzi hěn hǎo.	Zhāng Tóngzhìde zhèige zhuōzi hěn hǎo. Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?
4.	Wáng Tóngzhìde fànwǎn hěn hǎo.	Wáng Tóngzhìde zhèige fànwǎn hěn hǎo. Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?
5.	Mǎ Tóngzhìde shūjiàzi hěn hǎo.	Mǎ Tóngzhìde zhèige shūjiàzi hěn hǎo. Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?
6.	Lín Tóngzhìde dìtǎn hěn hǎo.	Lín Tóngzhìde zhèige dìtǎn hěn hǎo. Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?
7.	Lǐ Tóngzhìde yǐzi hěn hǎo.	Lǐ Tóngzhìde zhèige yǐzi hěn hǎo. Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?

UNIT 5

REFERENCE LIST

(in Běijīng)

1.	A:	Qǐng ni gěi wo liǎngzhāng wǔkuàide.	Please give me two fives.
2.	B:	Máfan ni, wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng shíkuàide.	Sorry to bother you. I have a ten here.
3.	B:	Qǐng ni gěi wo huànhuan.	Please change it for me.
4.	C:	Nín yào zěnme huàn?	How do you want to change it?
	B:	Qǐng gěi wo liǎngzhāng wǔkuàide ba.	How about giving me two fives, please.
5.	*B:	Xièxie.	Thank you.
	C:	Bú kèqi.	You're welcome.
6.	D:	Nǐmen shōu Měijīn ma?	Do you accept U.S. currency?
	E:	Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu.	I'm sorry, we don't.
7.	D:	Zài nǎr huàn ne? Zhèr yǒu méiyou yínháng?	Well, where do I change it? Is there a bank here?
	E:	Yǒu. Yínháng jiù zài nàr.	There is. The bank is right over there.
8.	D:	Qǐngwèn, shì bu shi zài zhèr huàn qián?	May I ask, is it here that I change money?
	F:	Shì, shì zài zhèr huàn.	Yes, you change it here.
9.	F:	Nǐ yào huàn duōshao?	How much do you want to change?
	D:	Wǒ zhèr yǒu yìbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.	I have one hundred U.S. dollars in traveler's checks here.
10.	D:	Jīntiānde páijià shi duōshao?	What is today's exchange rate?
	F:	Yíkuài Měijīn huàn yíkuài jiǔmáo liù Rénmínbì.	One U.S. dollar to one dollar and ninety-six cents in People's currency.

---

*This exchange occurs on the C-1 tape only.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

11.	yíge diànshàn	one electric fan
12.	yíge diànshì	one television
13.	yíge shōuyīnjī	one radio
14.	yíge zhōng	one clock
15.	yíge shǒubiǎo	one wristwatch

VOCABULARY

bú kèqi	you're welcome
diànshàn	electric fan
diànshì	television
huàn	to change, to exchange
lǚxíng	travel
lǚxíng zhīpiào (yìzhāng)	traveler's check
máfan ni	sorry to bother you
Měijīn	United States currency
páijià	exchange rate
Rénmínbì	People's currency (PRC)
shōu	to accept, to receive
shǒubiǎo	wristwatch
shōuyīnjī	radio
zěnme	how
zhīpiào (yìzhāng)	a check (e.g., banker's or personal)
zhōng	clock

(introduced on C-2 tape)

Yǒuyí Shāngdiàn	Friendship Department Store (in Běijīng)

REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Qǐng ni gěi wo liǎngzhāng wǔkuàide. — Please give me two fives.

Note on No. 1

Liǎngzhāng wǔkuàide refers to two 5-dollar BILLS. The marker *-de* at the end of *wǔkuàide* indicates that the phrase modifies an understood noun. In another context, the noun might be a different one. If the speaker says *liǎngge wǔkuàide* in a store, the phrase might refer to two ITEMS, that is, two items that cost five dollars. In earlier units, similar uses of *-de* were translated as "ones": *dàde*, "big ones."

2. B: Máfan ni, wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng shíkuàide. — Sorry to bother you. I have a ten here.

Notes on No. 2

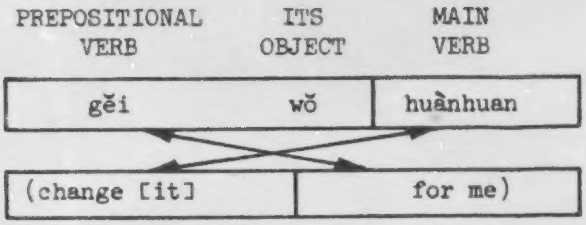
Máfan ni: *Máfan* is a verb meaning "bother," or "annoy." The expression *máfan ni* means "I'm bothering you." It is translated in No. 2 as "Sorry to bother you."

Wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng shíkuàide: Word for word, this would be "I-here there-is one-sheet 10-dollar-thing," or, a little more smoothly, "Here where I am, there is a 10-dollar bill."

3. B: Qǐng ni gěi wo huànhuan. — Please change it for me.

Notes on No. 3

Gěi wo: In No. 3 the verb *gěi* is used prepositionally to mean "for." Prepositional verbs and their objects come before the main verb in a sentence. Notice that while *gěi wo* precedes the main verb in Chinese, "for me" follows the verb in English.



Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkan nǐde nèiběn shū.	Please let me look at that book of yours.
Tā gěi mèimei mǎile yíge diànshàn.	He bought an electric fan for his younger sister.
Qǐng ni gěi wo xiě nǐde dìzhǐ.	Please write your address for me.

Huànhuan: The reduplication of huàn in No. 3 makes the request milder and more polite. (See Unit 3, notes on No. 1.)

4. C: Nín yào zěnme huàn?	How do you want to change it?
B: Qǐng gěi wo liǎngzhāng wǔkuàide ba.	How about giving me two fives, please.

Note on No. 4

Zěnme, "how," "in what way": In Chinese, adverbs precede verbs. Notice that the adverb zěnme is placed immediately before the main verb huàn, while in English "how" begins the sentence.

5. B: Xièxie.	Thank you.
C: Bú kèqi.	You're welcome.

Note on No. 5

Bú kèqi is an idiom meaning "don't be polite." It is used like the English "You're welcome." In English, you accept thanks; in Chinese, you modestly decline thanks.

6.	D:	Nǐmen shōu Měijīn ma?	Do you accept U.S. currency?
	E:	Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu.	I'm sorry, we don't.

7.	D:	Zài nǎr huàn ne? Zhèr yǒu méiyou yínháng?	Well, where do I change it? Is there a bank here?
	E:	Yǒu. Yínháng jiù zài nàr.	There is. The bank is right over there.

Notes on No. 7

The marker ne at the end of Zài nǎr huàn ne? indicates that the question follows from the sentence before it. The marker ne is often used at the end of a question which almost automatically follows the preceding sentence in a conversation: Wǒ hǎo. Nǐ ne? OR Zài nǎr huàn ne? Normally, you do not use a sentence ending with ne to start a new conversation.*

Yǒu méiyou: You have already learned one way to form a yes/no-choice question, with the negative choice tacked onto the end of the sentence. The second question in exchange 7 illustrates a second way: the negative choice comes immediately after the affirmative choice. Both patterns are common. Compare:

Zhèr	yǒu		yínháng	meiyou?	(Is there a bank here?)
Zhèr	yǒu	méiyou	yínháng?		

8.	D:	Qǐngwèn, shì bu shi zài zhèr huàn qián?	May I ask, is it here that I change money?
	F:	Shì, shì zài zhèr huàn.	Yes, you change it here.

Notes on No. 8

Shì bu shi is used to form a yes/no-choice question about something other than the main verb of a sentence. In this case, the question is about the phrase zài zhèr. Here is a comparison between the Chinese and a literal English version of the yes/no-choice question:

---

*This use of ne is different from the use of ne to indicate ongoing action or a continuing state: Tā xiànzài nian shu ne. (See BIO, Unit 8, note on No. 3.)

Shì bu shi	zài zhèr huàn qián?
(Is it or isn't it	here that I change money?)

Notice that the affirmative choice in shì bu shi has a tone, while the negative does not.

The answer to a shì bu shi question starts with shì, for "yes," or bú shi, for "no."

Shì zài zhèr huàn.	It is here that you change it.
Bú shi zài zhèr huàn.	It isn't here that you change it.

In exchange 8, the shì for "yes" is emphasized and so has its tone:

Shì, shì zài zhèr huàn.	Yes, it IS here that you change it.

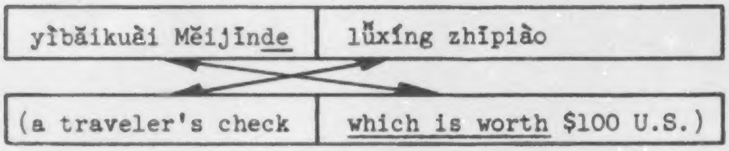
Notice that the place phrase zài zhèr precedes the main verb huàn. In Chinese, the order of phrases is TIME, PLACE, ACTION.

	TIME	PLACE	ACTION	
Wǒ	qùnián	zài Jiāzhōu	niàn shū.	(Last year I studied in California.)
Tā	xiànzài	zài yínháng	huàn qián ne.	(He is changing money at the bank now.)

9. F:	Nǐ yào huàn duōshao?	How much do you want to change?
D:	Wǒ zhèr yǒu yìbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.	I have one hundred U.S. dollars in traveler's checks here.

Note on No. 9

Yìbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào: In this phrase the traveler's check, lǚxíng zhīpiào, is being described as worth one hundred dollars in U.S. currency, yìbǎikuài Měijīn. The amount of money is made into a descriptive phrase by the addition of the marker of modification -de.


yìbǎikuài Měijīnde
lǚxíng zhīpiào
(a traveler's check
which is worth $100 U.S.)

10.	D:	Jīntiānde páijià shi duōshao?	What is today's exchange rate?
	F:	Yíkuài Měijīn huàn yíkuài jiǔmáo liù Rénmínbì.	One U.S. dollar to one dollar and ninety-six cents in People's currency.

Notes on No. 10

Huàn: In the second sentence of exchange 10, the verb huàn is used to equate amounts of money in two different currencies. The verb can be translated fairly literally as "can be exchanged for": "One U.S. dollar can be exchanged for one dollar and ninety-six cents in People's currency."

Rénmínbì: Rénmín means "people," and bì is the word for "currency." Rénmínbì (sometimes abbreviated as RMB) is the official name for PRC currency.

DRILLS

A. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Nǐ yào zěnme huàn? (How do you want to change it?)	(cue) 5 ones	You: Qǐng ni gěi wo wǔzhāng yíkuàide. (Please give me five ones.)
2.	Nǐ yào zěnme huàn?	2 fives	Qǐng ni gěi wo liǎngzhāng wǔkuàide.
3.	Nǐ yào zěnme huàn?	10 tens	Qǐng ni gěi wo shízhāng shíkuàide.
4.	Nǐ yào zěnme huàn?	5 ones	Qǐng ni gěi wo wǔzhāng yíkuàide.
5.	Nǐ yào zěnme huàn?	10 ones	Qǐng ni gěi wo shízhāng yíkuàide.
6.	Nǐ yào zěnme huàn?	5 tens	Qǐng ni gěi wo wǔzhāng shíkuàide.
7.	Nǐ yào zěnme huàn?	2 fives	Qǐng ni gěi wo liǎngzhāng wǔkuàide.

B. Substitution Drill

1.	Speaker: Nǐmen shōu Měijīn ma? (Do you accept U.S. currency?)	(cue) Dìyī Gōngsī	You: Dìyī Gōngsī shōu Měijīn ma? (Does the First Company accept U.S. currency?)
2.	Dìyī Gōngsī shōu Měijīn ma?	Jīnrì Gōngsī	Jīnrì Gōngsī shōu Měijīn ma?
3.	Jīnrì Gōngsī shōu Měijīn ma?	Yuǎndōng Gōngsī	Yuǎndōng Gōngsī shōu Měijīn ma?
4.	Yuǎndōng Gōngsī shōu Měijīn ma?	Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn	Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn shōu Měijīn ma?
5.	Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn shōu Měijīn ma?	Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn	Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn shōu Měijīn ma?
6.	Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn shōu Měijīn ma?	nǐmen zhèli	Nǐmen zhèli shōu Měijīn ma?
7.	Nǐmen zhèli shōu Měijīn ma?		

C. Response Drill

1.	**Speaker**: Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu Měijīn. (cue) nǎr (I'm sorry, we don't accept U.S. currency.)	**You**: Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr kéyi huàn ne? (May I ask, where can I change it?)
OR	Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu Měijīn. (cue) yínháng (I'm sorry, we don't accept U.S. currency.)	Qǐngwèn, zhèr yǒu meiyou yínháng? (May I ask, is there a bank here?)
2.	Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu Rénmínbì. nǎr	Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr kéyi huàn ne?
3.	Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu Táibì. yínháng	Qǐngwèn, zhèr yǒu meiyou yínháng?
4.	Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu lǚxíng zhīpiào. nǎr	Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr kéyi huàn ne?
5.	Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu zhīpiào. yínháng	Qǐngwèn, zhèr yǒu meiyou yínháng?
6.	Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu Měijīn zhīpiào. nǎr	Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr kéyi huàn ne?

D. Substitution Drill

1.	**Speaker**: Qǐngwèn shì bu shi zài zhèli huàn qián? (cue) zhège yínháng (May I ask, is it here that I change money?)	**You**: Qǐngwèn, shì bu shi zài zhège yínháng huàn qián? (May I ask, is it at this bank that I change money?)
2.	Qǐngwèn, shì bu shi zài zhège yínháng huàn qián? nǐmen zhèli	Qǐngwèn, shì bu shi zài nǐmen zhèli huàn qián?
3.	Qǐngwèn, shì bu shi zài nǐmen zhèli huàn qián? zhège yínháng	Qǐngwèn, shì bu shi zài zhège yínháng huàn qián?
4.	Qǐngwèn, shì bu shi zài zhège yínháng huàn qián? Táiwān Yínháng	Qǐngwèn, shì bu shi zài Táiwān Yínháng huàn qián?
5.	Qǐngwèn, shì bu shi zài Táiwān Yínháng huàn qián? tā nàli	Qǐngwèn, shì bu shi zài tā nàli huàn qián?

6. Qĭngwèn, shì bu shi zài tā nàli huàn qián? nĭmen zhèli	Qĭngwèn, shì bu shi zài nĭmen zhèli huàn qián?
7. Qĭngwèn, shì bu shi zài nĭmen zhèli huàn qián?	

E. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Wŏ zhèr yŏu lü̆xíng zhīpiào. (cue) 100 (I have traveler's checks here.)	You: Wŏ zhèr yŏu yìbăikuài Mĕijīnde lü̆xíng zhīpiào. (I have one hundred U.S. dollars in traveler's checks here.)
2. Wŏ zhèr yŏu lü̆xíng zhīpiào. 350	Wŏ zhèr yŏu sānbăi wŭshikuài Mĕijīnde lü̆xíng zhīpiào.
3. Wŏ zhèr yŏu lü̆xíng zhīpiào. 200	Wŏ zhèr yŏu liăngbăikuài Mĕijīnde lü̆xíng zhīpiào.
4. Wŏ zhèr yŏu lü̆xíng zhīpiào. 70	Wŏ zhèr yŏu qīshikuài Mĕijīnde lü̆xíng zhīpiào.
5. Wŏ zhèr yŏu lü̆xíng zhīpiào. 90	Wŏ zhèr yŏu jiŭshikuài Mĕijīnde lü̆xíng zhīpiào.
6. Wŏ zhèr yŏu lü̆xíng zhīpiào. 840	Wŏ zhèr yŏu bābăi sìshikuài Mĕijīnde lü̆xíng zhīpiào.
7. Wŏ zhèr yŏu lü̆xíng zhīpiào. 540	Wŏ zhèr yŏu wŭbăi sìshikuài Mĕijīnde lüxíng zhīpiào.

F. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Wŏ zhèr yŏu yìzhāng shíkuàide Rénmínbì. (I have one 10-dollar bill of People's currency here.)	You: Wŏ zhèr yŏu yìzhāng shíkuàide Rénmínbì. Qĭng ni gĕi wo huànhuan. (I have one 10-dollar bill of People's currency here. Please change it for me.)
2. Wŏ zhèr yŏu yìzhāng wŭkuàide Rénmínbì.	Wŏ zhèr yŏu yìzhāng wŭkuàide Rénmínbì. Qĭng ni gĕi wo huànhuan.
3. Wŏ zhèr yŏu yìzhāng wŭshikuài Mĕijīnde lü̆xíng zhīpiào.	Wŏ zhèr yŏu yìzhāng wŭshikuài Mĕijīnde lü̆xíng zhīpiào. Qĭng ni gĕi wo huànhuan.

4.	Wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.	Wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng ni gěi wo huànhuan.
5.	Wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng yìbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.	Wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng yìbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng ni gěi wo huànhuan.
6.	Tā zhèr yǒu liǎngzhāng èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.	Tā zhèr yǒu liǎngzhāng èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng ni gěi wo huànhuan.
7.	Tā zhèr yǒu liǎngzhāng wǔshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.	Tā zhèr yǒu liǎngzhāng wǔshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng ni gěi wo huànhuan.

G. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker:	Tā huàn duōshao qián? (cue) want (How much money is he changing?)	You: Tā yào huàn duōshao qián? (How much money does he want to change?)
	OR	Tā huàn yìbǎikuài Měijīn. (cue) did (He is changing one hundred U.S. dollars.)	Tā huànle yìbǎikuài Měijīn. (He changed one hundred U.S. dollars.)
	OR	Tā huàn yìbǎikuài Měijīn. (cue) has done so far (He is changing one hundred U.S. dollars.)	Tā huànle yìbǎikuài Měijīn le. (He has changed one hundred U.S. dollars so far.)
2.	Tā huàn duōshao qián?	did	Tā huànle duōshao qián?
3.	Tā huàn wǔshikuài Měijīn.	want	Tā yào huàn wǔshikuài Měijīn.
4.	Tā huàn sìshikuài Měijīn.	did	Tā huànle sìshikuài Měijīn.
5.	Tā huàn Měijīn.	has done so far	Tā huànle Měijīn le.

H. Response Drill

Use liǎng- for all your responses.

1.	Speaker: Tā mǎi shénme le? (What did he buy?)	(cue) shōuyīnjī	You: Tā mǎile liǎngge shōuyīnjī. (He bought two radios.)
2.	Tā mǎi shénme le?	diànshì	Tā mǎile liǎngge diànshì.
3.	Tā mǎi shénme le?	píngguǒ	Tā mǎile liǎngge píngguǒ.
4.	Tā mǎi shénme le?	yǐzi	Tā mǎile liǎngbǎ yǐzi.
5.	Tā mǎi shénme le?	chábēi	Tā mǎile liǎngge chábēi.
6.	Tā mǎi shénme le?	wǎn	Tā mǎile liǎngge wǎn.
7.	Tā mǎi shénme le?	zhuōzi	Tā mǎile liǎngzhāng zhuōzi.

I. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Qǐngwèn, wǒde nàběn zhèngzhìxué zài nǐ zhèli ma? (May I ask, is that political science book of mine over by you?)	(cue) tā	You: Bú zài wǒ zhèli, zài tā nàli. (It's not over by me; it's over by him.)
2.	Qǐngwèn, wǒde nàběn jīngjìxué zài nǐ zhèli ma?	tā	Bú zài wǒ zhèli, zài tā nàli.
3.	Qǐngwèn, wǒde nàběn Zhōngwén shū zài nǐ nàli ma?	Wáng Tàitai	Bú zài wǒ zhèli, zài Wáng Tàitai nàli.
4.	Qǐngwèn, wǒde nàběn zázhì zài nǐ nàli ma?	Lǐ Xiānsheng	Bú zài tā nàli, zài wǒ zhèli.
5.	Qǐngwèn, wǒde nàfèn Zhōngwén bào zài nǐ zhèli ma?	tā	Bú zài wǒ zhèli, zài tā nàli.
6.	Qǐngwèn, wǒde nàzhāng Táiwān dìtú zài nǐ zhèli ma?	tā	Bú zài wǒ zhèli, zài tā nàli.
7.	Qǐngwèn, wǒde nàfèn Yīngwén bào zài nǐ nàli ma?	Wū Xiǎojiě	Bú zài wǒ zhèli, zài Wū Xiǎojiě nàli.

UNIT 6

REFERENCE LIST

(in Taipei)

1.	A:	Qǐngwèn, nǐmen zhèli kéyi huàn Měijīn ma?	May I ask, can U.S. currency be changed here?
	B:	Duìbuqǐ, bù kéyi.	I'm sorry, that's not possible.
2.	A:	Lǚxíng zhīpiào ne?	How about traveler's checks?
	B:	Yě bù kéyi. Nín děi zài Táiwān Yínháng huàn.	That's not possible either. You have to change them at the Bank of Taiwan.
3.	A:	Yínháng shénme shíhou kāi mén?	When does the bank open?
	B:	Jiǔdiǎn zhōng kāi mén.	It opens at nine o'clock.
4.	A:	Jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?	What time does it close?
	B:	Sāndiǎn zhōng guān mén.	It closes at three o'clock.
5.	A:	Xiànzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyi huàn ba?	What time is it now? I may still change money, I suppose?
	B:	Xiànzài liǎngdiǎn bàn. Hái kéyi huàn.	It's half past two now. You may still change money.
6.	A:	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shi yìbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.	I want to change some money into Taiwan currency. Here are one hundred U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.
	C:	Hǎo. Yíkuài Měijīn huàn sānshibākuài Táibì.	Certainly. One U.S. dollar is thirty-eight dollars in Taiwan currency.
7.	A:	Zhè shi wǔzhāng èrshikuàide lǚxíng zhīpiào.	Here are five 20-dollar traveler's checks.
	C:	Qǐng nín děngyiděng. Wǒ jiù lái.	Please wait a moment. I'll be right back.
8.	A:	Wǒ yào diǎn xiǎo piàozi. Zhèzhāng yìbǎikuàide qǐng ni gěi wo huànhuan, xíng bu xíng?	I would like some small bills. Please change this 100-dollar bill for me. Would that be all right?

	C: Xíng. Gĕi nín jiŭzhāng shíkuàide, liăngzhāng wŭkuàide.	All right. I'll give you nine tens and two fives.
9.	A: Máfan ni le.	Sorry to have bothered you.
	C: Méi shenme.	It's nothing.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

10.	zăochen (zăochén)	early morning
11.	zăoshang (zăoshàng)	morning
12.	shàngwŭ (shàngwu)	forenoon, morning
13.	zhōngwŭ (zhōngwu)	noon
14.	xiàwŭ (xiàwu)	afternoon
15.	wănshang (wănshàng)	evening
16.	yèli	night
17.	bànyè	midnight
18.	jiàn	to meet
19.	mámahūhū	so-so, fair

VOCABULARY

bàn	half
bànyè	midnight
děi	must
děng	to wait
děngyiděng	to wait a moment
-diǎn	(counter for hours on the clock)
gěi	for
guān	to close
guān mén	to close (for the business day); to close down, to go out of business
jiàn	to meet
jǐdiǎn zhōng	what hour, what time
jiù	immediately (with reference to time)
kāi	to open
kāi mén	to open (for the business day); to open for business
kéyi	may, can, to be permitted
mámahūhū	so-so, fair
méi shenme	it's nothing
mén(r)	door
piàozi (yìzhāng)	bills (currency)
shàngwǔ (shàngwu)	forenoon, morning
Táibì	Taiwan currency (NT$)
wǎnshang (wǎnshàng)	evening
xiàwǔ (xiàwu)	afternoon
xíng	to be all right
yèli	night
zǎochen (zǎochén)	early morning
zǎoshang (zǎoshàng)	morning
zhōng	o'clock
zhōngwǔ (zhōngwu)	noon

(introduced on C-2 and P-2 tapes)

kāishǐ	to start, to begin
yǒude shíhou	sometimes

(introduced in Communication Game)

-táng	(counter for class periods)

REFERENCE NOTES

1.	A:	Qǐngwèn, nǐmen zhèli kéyi huàn Měijīn ma?	May I ask, can U.S. currency be changed here?
	B:	Duìbuqǐ, bù kéyi.	I'm sorry, that's not possible.

Notes on No. 1

Kéyi is the auxiliary verb "may," "can." It is often used, as here, to say what is permitted by the rules of a particular organization. It is often best translated by the English word "can" rather than by "may."

Like all auxiliary verbs, *kéyi* is a state verb and therefore can be made negative only with *bù*.

Nǐmen zhèli is a place phrase acting as topic. The first sentence in exchange 1 could be translated more literally as "As for your place here, may one change American currency?"

2.	A:	Lǚxíng zhīpiào ne?	How about traveler's checks?
	B:	Yě bù kéyi. Nín děi zài Táiwān Yínháng huàn.	That's not possible either. You have to change them at the Bank of Taiwan.

Note on No. 2

Děi, "must," "have to": Unlike many other auxiliary verbs, *děi* cannot be made negative.* Also, it is not used in short answers or short questions. For the question form of *děi*, it is wrong to say *děi bu děi*; instead, use *shì bu shi děi*, "is it (true) that...must" (or use *yòng bu yong*, "is it necessary to...").

Děi is a colloquial northern Chinese word which is not necessarily used or understood in all parts of China. In particular, *děi* is heard infrequently in Taiwan. When speaking with Chinese who do not use *děi*, you may substitute an expression with a similar meaning. In many sentences, you can substitute *yào*, "should," "must"; in other sentences, you can use *bìxū*, "must."

---

*To say "must not," use *qiānwàn bié*, "by no means must": *Nǐ qiānwàn bié qù*, "You must not go." To say "need not," use *bú bì* or *bú yòng*: *Nǐ bú bì qù*, "You need not (don't have to) go," OR *Nǐ bú yòng lái*, "You need not (don't have to) come."

3.	A: Yínháng shénme shíhou kāi mén?	When does the bank open?
	B: Jiǔdiǎn zhōng kāi mén.	It opens at nine o'clock.
4.	A: Jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?	What time does it close?
	B: Sāndiǎn zhōng guān mén.	It closes at three o'clock.

Notes on Nos. 3-4

Kāi mén, *guān mén*: The words *kāi* and *guān* mean "to open" and "to close." *Mén* means "door." In referring to business hours, *kāi* and *guān* are always followed by *mén*. The only exception is that *mén* may be omitted in a sentence if the word was included earlier in the conversation, as in the following example:

Yínháng sāndiǎn zhōng *guān mén*.	The bank closes at three o'clock.
Xiànzài yǐjīng *guān* le.	It's already closed now.

The phrases *kāi mén* and *guān mén* may also mean "to be open" and "to be closed." That is, they may refer to states as well as to actions of opening and closing.*

Yínháng hái kāi mén ba?	The bank is still open, I suppose?

Jiǔdiǎn zhōng: The word for "clock" is *zhōng*, and *diǎn* (literally, "a dot") is the counter for hours on the clock. In time expressions, *zhōng* corresponds to "o'clock." As is the case for "o'clock" in English, *zhōng* may be omitted.

Jiǔdiǎn (zhōng).	It's nine (o'clock).

Jǐdiǎn zhōng: Notice that questions about clock time are formed with *jǐ-*, not with *duōshao*, since the answers involve small numbers.

5.	A: Xiànzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyi huàn ba?	What time is it now? I may still change money, I suppose?
	B: Xiànzài liǎngdiǎn bàn. Hái kéyi huàn.	It's half past two now. You may still change money.

---

*The phrase *guān mén* can also refer to going out of business.

Notes on No. 5

Ba is used in exchange 5 to mark a question expressing the speaker's supposition about the answer. Here is another example:

Yínháng hái kāi mén ba?		The bank is still open, I suppose?
	OR	The bank is still open, isn't it?

Bàn: Liǎngdiǎn bàn may be translated as "half past two," or "two-thirty." Notice that, literally, the expression is "two dots half," with the number bàn after the counter diǎn. In Chinese, "two-thirty" may be said with or without zhōng:

liǎngdiǎn bàn OR liǎngdiǎn bàn zhōng

6.	A:	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shi yìbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.	I want to change some money into Taiwan currency. Here are one hundred U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.
	C:	Hǎo. Yíkuài Měijīn huàn sānshibākuài Táibì.	Certainly. One U.S. dollar is thirty-eight dollars in Taiwan currency.

Note on No. 6

Huàn Táibì: The verb huàn really means "to exchange," that is, to replace one thing with another. Huàn sets up an equivalence between the two items being exchanged but does not indicate the direction of the exchange (i.e., which item the speaker starts with and which he ends up with). In the middle of someone's stay in Taiwan, we assume that the phrase huàn Táibì refers to changing some money INTO Taiwan currency. At the end of a stay in Taiwan, we would guess that the phrase refers to changing money FROM Taiwan currency. Only the context indicates whether to translate huàn as "change into" or as "change from."*

7.	A:	Zhè shi wǔzhāng èrshikuàide lǚxíng zhīpiào.	Here are five 20-dollar traveler's checks.
	C:	Qǐng nín děngyiděng. Wǒ jiù lái.	Please wait a moment. I'll be right back.

---

*The English verb "rent" is similar: The sentence "I want to rent an apartment" could mean either "I have an apartment to rent TO someone" or "I want to find an apartment to rent FROM someone."

Notes on No. 7

Dĕngyidĕng is a reduplicated verb with a toneless *yī*, "one," inserted. Notice that here the second *dĕng* keeps its tone. Compare this to the type of reduplication you saw in Unit 3: *kànkan*, *kànyikan*. As you learned previously, reduplication has the effect of making the verb more tentative.

Jiŭ is used in the last sentence of exchange 7 to indicate how soon the action will happen: "immediately," "right away."

Lái: The last sentence in the exchange is said as the teller turns away from the counter to go to a desk behind it. In this context, the verb *lái* can be understood as "come *back*."

8.	A:	Wŏ yào diăn xiăo piàozi. Zhè zhāng yìbăikuàide qĭng ni gĕi wo huànhuan, xíng bu xíng?	I would like some small bills. Please change this 100-dollar bill for me. Would that be all right?
	C:	Xíng. Gĕi nín jiŭzhāng shikuàide, liăngzhāng wŭkuàide.	All right. I'll give you nine tens and two fives.

9.	A:	Máfan ni le.	Sorry to have bothered you.
	C:	Méi shenme.	It's nothing.

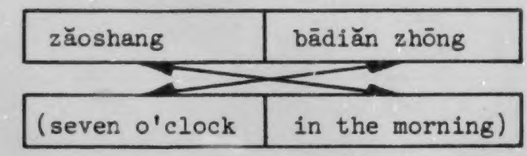
Note on No. 9

Méi shenme: A literal translation of this expression is "There isn't anything," presumably meaning "What I did wasn't anything."

10.	zăochen (zăochén)	early morning
11.	zăoshang (zăoshàng)	morning
12.	shàngwŭ (shàngwu)	forenoon, morning
13.	zhōngwŭ (zhōngwu)	noon
14.	xiàwŭ (xiàwu)	afternoon
15.	wănshang (wănshàng)	evening
16.	yèli	night
17.	bànyè	midnight
18.	jiàn	to meet
19.	mámahūhū	so-so, fair

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

In Chinese, clock time is usually preceded by a time-of-day, or part-of-the-day, word: zǎoshang qīdiǎn zhōng, "seven o'clock in the morning." Notice that the word order of elements in the Chinese phrase is the opposite of the English translation:



Here are more examples of clock-time phrases:

zǎoshang bādiǎn zhōng	8:00 a.m.
shàngwǔ shídiǎn zhōng	10:00 a.m.
xiàwǔ sìdiǎn bàn zhōng	4:30 p.m.
wǎnshang qīdiǎn bàn zhōng	7:30 p.m.

Remember that zhōng may be left off. In short answers, however, the full form is usually used.

TIME-OF-DAY WORDS	TRANSLATIONS
zǎochen	early morning
zǎoshang	morning [general term] (full daylight until near noon)
shàngwǔ	forenoon (normal working hours until noon)
zhōngwǔ	noon
xiàwǔ	afternoon (noon until the end of the business day)
wǎnshang	evening (from sunset)
bànyè	midnight
yèli	night (until sunrise)

The hours of zǎoshang and shàngwǔ overlap. Although zǎoshang can refer to the whole morning, shàngwǔ is often used instead when talking about the morning hours of the normal business day (9 a.m. [or perhaps 8 a.m.] until noon). Even in a business context, times before 8 a.m. are always referred to as zǎoshang.

Xiàwǔ ends and *wǎnshang* begins at the end of the business day, when a person returns home.

Wǎnshang in the city may last until as late as midnight, while in the country *yèli* may begin at 10 p.m.

Yèli sounds a bit old-fashioned to some speakers, who prefer to use *wǎnshang* for both "evening" and "night." *Wǎnshang* is also used to mean "during the night" (i.e., during sleeping hours).

Jiàn, literally, "to see," means "to meet (with someone)," "to see (someone)."

Zàijiàn.	Good-bye. (See you again.)
Míngtiān jiàn.	See you tomorrow.
Wǒmen kéyi jiǔdiǎn zhōng jiàn.	We can meet at nine o'clock.

Mámahūhū, "so-so," "fair," "not so bad," "not so good": Literally, this word means "horse-horse-tiger-tiger."

Jīntiān zěnmeyàng?	How is it today?
Mámahūhū.	So-so.

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

1.	Speaker: Qǐngwèn, nǐmen zhèli kéyi huàn Měijīn ma? (cue) Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn (May I ask, can U.S. currency be changed here?)	You: Qǐngwèn, Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn kéyi huàn Měijīn ma? (May I ask, can U.S. currency be changed at the Yuánshān Hotel?)
2.	Qǐngwèn, Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn kéyi huàn Měijīn ma? tāmen nàli	Qǐngwèn, tāmen nàli kéyi huàn Měijīn ma?
3.	Qǐngwèn, tāmen nàli kéyi huàn Měijīn ma? Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn	Qǐngwèn, Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn kéyi huàn Měijīn ma?
4.	Qǐngwèn, Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn kéyi huàn Měijīn ma? zhège yínháng	Qǐngwèn, zhège yínháng kéyi huàn Měijīn ma?
5.	Qǐngwèn, zhège yínháng kéyi huàn Měijīn ma? nàge fàndiàn	Qǐngwèn, nàge fàndiàn kéyi huàn Měijīn ma?
6.	Qǐngwèn, nàge fàndiàn kéyi huàn Měijīn ma? nǐmen zhèli	Qǐngwèn, nǐmen zhèli kéyi huàn Měijīn ma?
7.	Qǐngwèn, nǐmen zhèli kéyi huàn Měijīn ma? Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn	Qǐngwèn, Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn kéyi huàn Měijīn ma?

B. Transformation and Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Nín děi zài Táiwān Yínháng huàn. (You must change it at the Bank of Taiwan.)	You: Hǎo, wǒ zài Táiwān Yínháng huàn. (Fine, I'll change it at the Bank of Taiwan.)
2.	Nín děi zài Yuànshān Dàfàndiàn huàn.	Hǎo, wǒ zài Yuànshān Dàfàndiàn huàn.
3.	Nín děi zài Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn huàn.	Hǎo, wǒ zài Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn huàn.
4.	Nín děi zài Měiguo Yínháng huàn.	Hǎo, wǒ zài Měiguo Yínháng huàn.
5.	Nín děi zài Táiwan Yínháng huàn.	Hǎo, wǒ zài Táiwān Yínháng huàn.

6.	Nín děi zài zhège yínháng huàn.	Hǎo, wǒ zài zhège yínháng huàn.
7.	Nín děi zài Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn huàn.	Hǎo, wo zài Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn huàn.

C. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Qǐngwèn, yínháng shénme shíhou kāi mén? (May I ask, when does the bank open?)	You: Qǐngwèn, yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén? (May I ask, at what time does the bank open?)
2.	Qǐngwèn, Jīnrì Gōngsī shénme shíhou guān mén?	Qǐngwèn, Jīnrì Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?
3.	Qǐngwèn, Yuǎndōng Gōngsī shénme shíhou kāi mén?	Qǐngwèn, Yuǎndōng Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?
4.	Qǐngwèn, Dìyī Gōngsī shénme shíhou kāi mén?	Qǐngwèn, Dìyī Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?
5.	Qǐngwèn, Táiwān Yínháng shénme shíhou guān mén?	Qǐngwèn, Táiwān Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?
6.	Qǐngwèn, yóuzhèngjú shénme shíhou kāi mén?	Qǐngwèn, yóuzhèngjú jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?
7.	Qǐngwèn, Dìyī Gōngsī shénme shíhou guān mén?	Qǐngwèn, Dìyī Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?

D. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Nín yào huàn qián ma? (Do you want to change money?)	(cue) yínháng	You: Duì le. Qǐngwèn, yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén? (Right. May I ask, at what time does the bank open?)
2.	Nín yào mǎi dōngxi ma?	Jīnrì Gōngsī	Duì le. Qǐngwèn, Jīnrì Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?
3.	Nín yào huàn qián ma?	Táiwān Yínháng	Duì le. Qǐngwèn, Táiwān Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?
4.	Nín yào mǎi yǔsǎn ma?	Dìyī Gōngsī	Duì le. Qǐngwèn, Dìyī Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

5.	Nín yào mǎi pánziwǎn ma? Yuǎndōng Gōngsī	Duì le. Qǐngwèn, Yuǎndōng Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?
6.	Tā yào mǎi diànshì ma? nàge gōngsī	Duì le. Qǐngwèn, nàge gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?
7.	Nín yào mǎi shōuyīnjī ma? Jīnrì Gōngsī	Duì le. Qǐngwèn, Jīnrì Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

E. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Hái kéyi huàn ma? (May I still change it?)	You: Xiànzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyi huàn ma? (What time is it now? May I still change it?)
2.	Hái kéyi mǎi ma?	Xiànzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyi mǎi ma?
3.	Hái kéyi huàn ma?	Xiànzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyi huàn ma?
4.	Hái kéyi mài ma?	Xiànzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyi mài ma?
5.	Hái kéyi huàn ma?	Xiànzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyi huàn ma?
6.	Hái kéyi mǎi ma?	Xiànzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyi mǎi ma?
7.	Hái kéyi mài ma?	Xiànzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyi mài ma?

F. Expansion Drill

In your responses, assume that closing time is seven o'clock.

1.	Speaker: Xiànzài wǔdiǎn bàn. (It's five-thirty.)	You: Xiànzài wǔdiǎn bàn, hái méi guān mén. (It's five-thirty; they haven't closed yet.)
OR	Xiànzài qīdiǎn bàn. (It's seven-thirty)	Xiànzài qīdiǎn bàn, yǐjing guān mén le. (It's seven-thirty; they have already closed.)
2.	Xiànzài liùdiǎn zhōng.	Xiànzài liùdiǎn zhōng, hái méi guān mén.
3.	Xiànzài qīdiǎn bàn.	Xiànzài qīdiān bàn, yǐjing guān mén le.
4.	Xiànzài sìdiǎn bàn.	Xiànzài sìdiǎn bàn, hái méi guān mén.
5.	Xiànzài bādiǎn zhōng.	Xiànzài bādiǎn zhōng, yǐjing guān mén le.
6.	Xiànzài liùdiǎn bàn.	Xiànzài liùdiǎn bàn, hái méi guān mén.

G. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. (cue) 100 (I want to change a little money into Taiwan currency.)		You: Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shì yìbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. (I want to change a little money into Taiwan currency. Here are one hundred U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.)
2.	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì.	20	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shi èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.
3.	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì.	40	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shi sìshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.
4.	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì.	30	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shi sānshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.
5.	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì.	50	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shi wǔshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

6.	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì.	70	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shi qīshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.
7.	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì.	80	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shi bāshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

H. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. (cue) 100 (I want to change a little money into People's currency.)	You: Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. Zhèi shi yìbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. (I want to change a little money into People's currency. Here are one hundred U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.)
OR	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. (cue) páijià (I want to change a little money into People's currency.)	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. Jīntiande páijià shi duōshao? (I want to change a little money into People's currency. What is today's exchange rate?)
2.	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. 20	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. Zhèi shi èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.
3.	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. páijià	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. Jīntiande páijià shi duōshao?
4.	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. 60	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. Zhèi shi liùshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.
5.	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. páijià	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. Jīntiande páijià shi duōshao?
6.	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. 80.	Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. Zhèi shi bāshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

I. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Zhèi shi wǔzhāng lǚxíng zhīpiào. (cue) 20 (Here are five traveler's checks.)	You: Zhèi shi wǔzhāng èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. (Here are five 20-dollar U.S. traveler's checks.)
2.	Nèi shi liǎngzhāng lǚxíng zhīpiào. 10	Nèi shi liǎngzhāng shíkuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.
3.	Zhèi shi yìzhāng lǚxíng zhīpiào. 100	Zhèi shi yìzhāng yìbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.
4.	Zhèi shi sānzhāng lǚxíng zhīpiào. 20	Zhèi shi sānzhāng èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.
5.	Nèi shi sìzhāng lǚxíng zhīpiào. 50	Nèi shi sìzhāng wǔshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.
6.	Nèi shi liùzhāng lǚxíng zhīpiào. 10	Nèi shi liùzhāng shíkuài Měijīnde lüxíng zhīpiào.
7.	Zhèi shi sānzhāng lǚxíng zhīpiào. 20	Zhèi shi sānzhāng èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

J. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Wǒ yào diǎnr xiǎo piàozi. (I want some small bills.)	You: Wǒ yào diǎnr xiǎo piàozi. Qǐng ni gěi wo huànhuan. (I want some small bills. Please change this for me.)
2.	Zhèi shi èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.	Zhèi shi èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng ni gěi wo huànhuan.
3.	Wǒ yào diǎnr xiǎo piàozi.	Wǒ yào diǎnr xiǎo piàozi. Qǐng ni gěi wo huànhuan.
4.	Zhèi shi yìbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.	Zhèi shi yìbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng ni gěi wo huànhuan.
5.	Zhèi shi wǔshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.	Zhèi shi wǔshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng ni gěi wo huànhuan.
6.	Wǒ yào diǎnr xiǎo piàozi.	Wǒ yào diǎnr xiǎo piàozi. Qǐng ni gěi wo huànhuan.

7.	Zhèi shi èrshikuài Mĕijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.		Zhèi shi èrshikuài Mĕijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qĭng ni gĕi wo huànhuan.

K. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Qĭng nín gĕi wo huànhuan. (cue) 20 (Please change this for me.)		You: Qĭng nín gĕi wo huànhuan. Zhèi shi èrshikuài Mĕijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. (Please change this for me. Here are twenty U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.)
OR	Qĭng nín gĕi wo huànhuan. (cue) xiăo piàozi (Please change this for me.)		Qĭng nín gĕi wo huànhuan. Wŏ yào diănr xiăo piàozi. (Please change this for me. I want some small bills.)
OR	Qĭng nín gĕi wo huànhuan. (cue) páijià (Please change this for me.)		Qĭng nín gĕi wo huànhuan. Jīntiānde páijià shì duōshao? (Please change this for me. What is today's exchange rate?)
2.	Qĭng nín gĕi wo huànhuan.	100	Qĭng nín gĕi wo huànhuan. Zhèi shi yìbăikuài Mĕijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.
3.	Qĭng nín gĕi wo huànhuan. xiăo piàozi		Qĭng nín gĕi wo huànhuan. Wŏ yào diănr xiăo piàozi.
4.	Qĭng nín gĕi wo huànhuan. páijià		Qĭng nín gĕi wo huànhuan. Jīntiānde páijià shì duōshao?
5.	Qĭng nín gĕi wo huànhuan.	50	Qĭng nín gĕi wo huànhuan. Zhèi shi wŭshikuài Mĕijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

L. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Yínháng jĭdiăn zhōng kāi mén? (cue) shàngwŭ (At what time does the bank open?)	You: Yínháng shàngwŭ jĭdiăn zhōng kāi mén? (At what time in the morning does the bank open?)
2.	Yóuzhèngjú bādiăn bàn kāi mén. zăoshang	Yóuzhèngjú zăoshang bādiăn bàn kāi mén.

3.	Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén? xiàwǔ	Yínháng xiàwǔ jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?
4.	Yuǎndōng Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén? zǎoshang	Yuǎndōng Gōngsī zǎoshang jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?
5.	Dìyī Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén? wǎnshang	Dìyī Gōngsī wǎnshang jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?
6.	Táiwān Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén? zǎoshang	Táiwān Yínháng zǎoshang jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?
7.	Táiwān Yínháng sāndiǎn zhōng guān mén? xiàwǔ	Táiwān Yínháng xiàwǔ sāndiǎn zhōng guān mén.

M. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén? (cue) 9 a.m. (At what time does the bank open?)	You: Yínháng shàngwǔ jiǔdiǎn zhōng kāi mén. (The bank opens at nine o'clock in the morning.)
2.	Yóuzhèngjú jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén? 5 p.m.	Yóuzhèngjú xiàwǔ wǔdiǎn zhōng guān mén.
3.	Yuǎndōng Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén? 10 p.m.	Yuǎndōng Gōngsī wǎnshang shídiǎn zhōng guān mén.
4.	Jīnrì Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén? 8 a.m.	Jīnrì Gōngsī zǎoshang bādiǎn zhōng kāi mén.
5.	Táiwān Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén? 9 a.m.	Táiwān Yínháng zǎoshang jiǔdiǎn zhōng kāi mén.
6.	Dìyī Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén? 10 p.m.	Dìyī Gōngsī wǎnshang shídiǎn zhōng guān mén.
7.	Nàge yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén? 3 p.m.	Nàge yínháng xiàwǔ sāndiǎn zhōng guān mén.

MODULE 4: DIRECTIONS

The Directions Module (DIR) will provide you with the skills needed to ask for and understand directions to any place indoors or outdoors, to give simple directions, to understand and give addresses, and to describe relative locations.

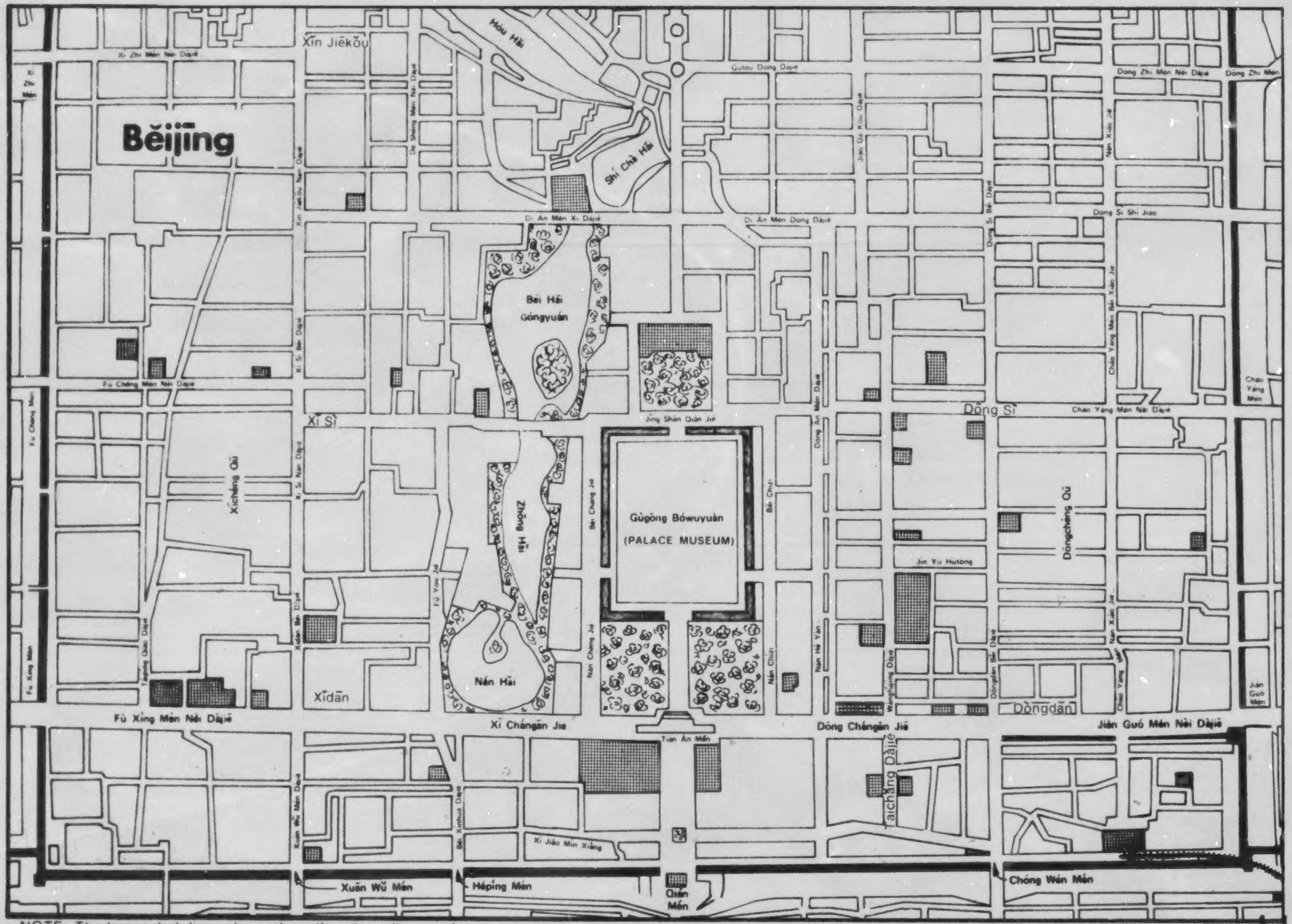
Before starting the module, you must take and pass the MON Criterion Test.

The Criterion Test will focus largely on this module, but material from ORN, BIO, MON, and associated resource modules may also be included.

OBJECTIVES

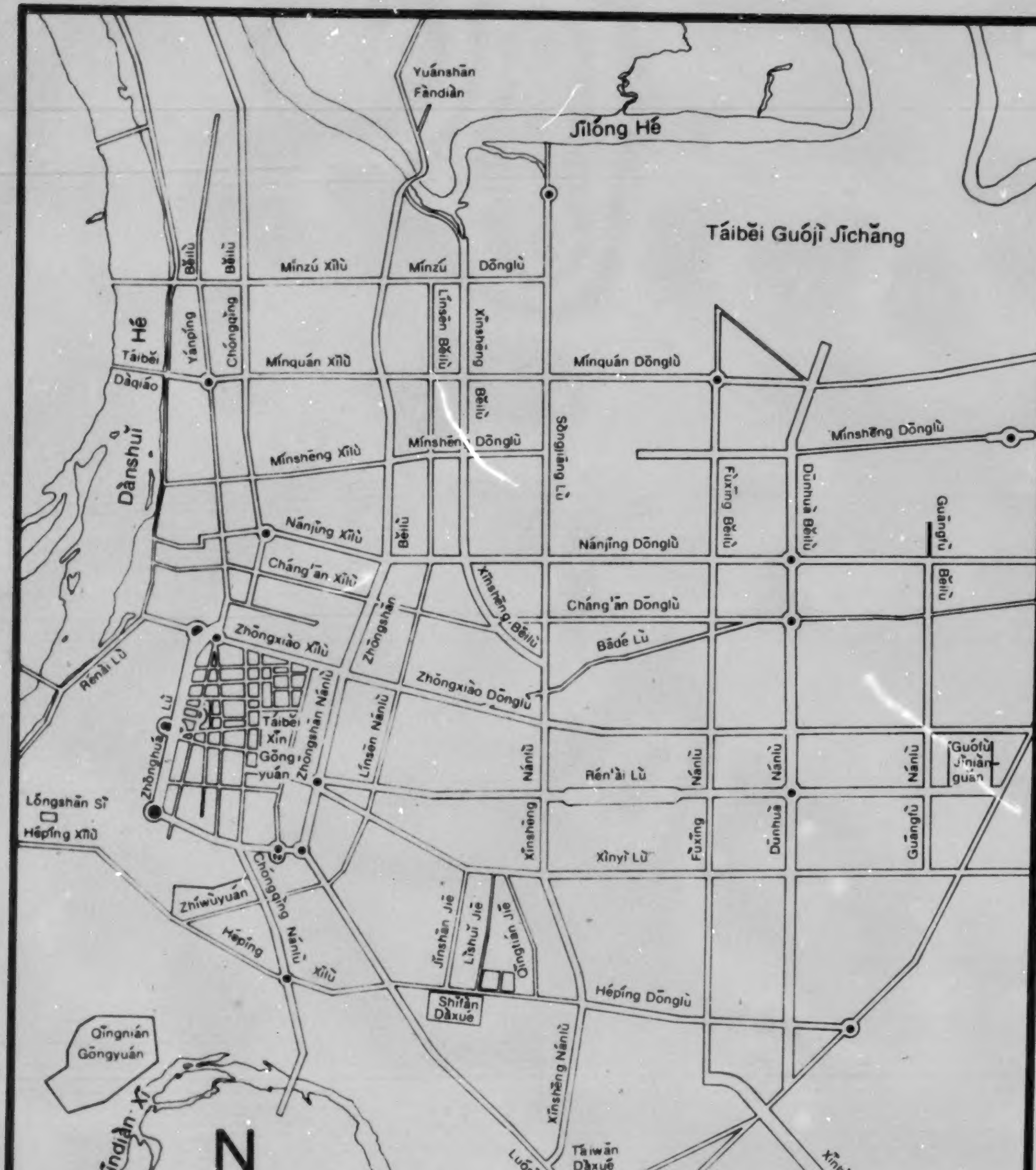
Upon successful completion of this module, the student should be able to

1. Give the English equivalent for any Chinese sentence in the DIR Target Lists.
2. Say any Chinese sentence in the DIR Target Lists when cued with its English equivalent.
3. Ask for directions to a location in a city, to a place in a building, or to a specific address.
4. Comprehend directions well enough to trace the route on a city map or a floor plan.
5. Demonstrate understanding of directions by restating at least part of them step by step.
6. Distinguish between Běijīng and Taipei expressions for directions by matching expressions to the cities in which they would be used.
7. Direct someone (using single-sentence directions) to various places in a building by describing a route marked on a floor plan.


Běijīng
Xin Jiēkǒu
Xi Zhí Mén Nèi Dàjiē
Xi Zhí Mén
Hòu Hǎi
Shí Chà Hǎi
Gulou Dong Dajie
Dong Zhí Mén Nèi Dàjiē
Dong Zhí Mén
Dì Ān Mén Xi Dàjiē
Dì Ān Mén Dong Dàjiē
Dong Si Shi Tiao
Běi Hǎi Gōngyuán
Fù Chéng Mén Nèi Dàjiē
Fù Chéng Mén
Xī Sì
Dōng Sì
Chao Yang Mén Nèi Dàjiē
Chao Yang Mén
Jing Shān Qián Jiē
Xichéng Qū
Zhōng Hǎi
Nán Hǎi
Gùgōng Bówuyuàn
(PALACE MUSEUM)
Dōngchéng Qū
Jin Yu Hutong
Běi Chang Jie
Nán Chang Jie
Běi Chízi
Nán Chízi
Nán He Yan
Dong Ān Mén Dàjiē
Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē
Fu You Jie
Xidān
Dōngdān
Fù Xìng Mén Nèi Dàjiē
Fù Xìng Mén
Xī Chángān Jie
Dōng Chángān Jiē
Jiàn Guó Mén Nèi Dàjiē
Jiàn Guó Mén
Tiān Ān Mén
Táichang Dàjiē
Xi Jiāo Min Xiàng
Xuān Wǔ Mén
Hépíng Mén
Qián Mén
Chóng Wén Mén

NOTE: The heavy dark lines show where the city walls were formerly located.

Taipei


Yuánshān Fàndiàn
Jīlóng Hé
Táiběi Guójì Jīchǎng
Běilù
Běilù
Mínzú Xīlù
Mínzú
Dōnglù
Dànshuǐ
Hé
Táiběi
Dàqiáo
Yánpíng
Chóngqìng
Línsēn Běilù
Xīnshēng
Běilù
Mínquán Xīlù
Mínquán Dōnglù
Mínshēng Xīlù
Mínshēng Dōnglù
Mínshēng Dōnglù
Sōngjiāng Lù
Fùxīng Běilù
Dūnhuà Běilù
Guāngfù
Běilù
Nánjīng Xīlù
Běilù
Nánjīng Dōnglù
Cháng'ān Xīlù
Cháng'ān Dōnglù
Zhōngshān
Xīnshēng Běilù
Bādé Lù
Zhōngxiào Xīlù
Zhōngxiào Dōnglù
Rénài Lù
Zhōnghuá Lù
Táiběi
Xīn
Gōng
yuán
Zhōngshān Nánlù
Línsēn Nánlù
Nánlù
Rén'ài Lù
Nánlù
Nánlù
Nánlù
Guófù
Jìniàn
guǎn
Lóngshān Sì
Hépíng Xīlù
Xīnshēng
Fùxīng
Dūnhuà
Guāngfù
Xìnyì Lù
Zhíwùyuán
Chóngqìng
Nánlù
Hépíng
Xīlù
Jīnshān Jiē
Lìshuǐ Jiē
Qīngtián Jiē
Shīfàn
Dàxué
Hépíng Dōnglù
Qīngnián
Gōngyuán
Xīndiàn Xī
Xīnshēng Nánlù
Táiwān
Dàxué
Luósīfú Lù
Jīlóng Lù
Xīnhǎi Lù
N

UNIT 1 TARGET LIST

1.	Nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao Huáměi Kāfēitīng?	Do you know of the Huáměi Coffeehouse?
	Bù zhīdào.	No, I don't.
2.	Dào kāfēitīng qù, zěnme zǒu?	How do I get to the coffeehouse?
	Cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ zǒu. Dàole lùkǒu zài wàng yòu zǒu, jiù dào le.	From here you go to the left. When you have reached the intersection, then you go to the right, and then you're there.
3.	Cóng zhèli dào yínháng qù, wǒ xiān wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu dui?	To get from here to the bank, I first go to the right. Is that correct?
	Bú shi, cóng zhèli yìzhí zǒu.	No, from here you go straight.
4.	Ránhòu, dàole lùkǒu, zài wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu dui?	After that, when I have reached the intersection, then I go to the left. Is that correct?
	Duì le.	That's correct.
	Hǎo. Wǒ zhīdao le. Xièxie.	Good. I've got it now. Thank you.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

5.	fànguǎnzi	restaurant (Taipei)
6.	fànguǎnr	restaurant (Běijīng)
7.	shāngdiàn	store, shop (Taipei)
8.	pùzi	store, shop (Běijīng)
9.	xuéxiào	school
10.	fángzi	house
11.	xiàng	towards

UNIT 2 TARGET LIST

1.	Nǐ zhīdao Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn shì bu shi zài zhèr fùjìn?	Do you know whether the Dōngdān Movie Theater is in this area?
	Shì.	Yes.
2.	Cóng zhèr dào Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn qù, zěnme zǒu?	How do I get from here to the Dōngdān Movie Theater?
	Chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng dōng zǒu.	When you have gone out of the hotel, walk to the east.
	Dàole dìèrge lùkǒur, běibianr shi Dōngdān Càishichǎng.	When you have reached the second intersection, on the north side is the Dōngdān Market.
	Nánbianr shi Dōngdān Gōngyuán.	On the south side is Dōngdān Park.
	Diànyǐngyuàn jiù zài Dōngdān Càishichǎngde xībianr.	The movie theater is just on the west side of the Dōngdān Market.
3.	Qù kàn diànyǐng yǐqián, wǒ xiān qù kàn yige péngyou.	Before I go to see the movie, I am first going to visit a friend.
4.	Fàndiàn lǐbianr yǒu meiyou mài tángde?	Is there a place to buy candy in the hotel?
	Yǒu. Yǒu yige xiǎomàibù. Zài nèibianr.	Yes. There's a variety shop. It's over there.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

5.	wàibianr (wàibian)	outside
6.	yǐhòu	after
7.	yòubianr (yòubian)	right side
8.	zuǒbianr (zuǒbian)	left side
9.	xiǎoxué	elementary school
10.	zhōngxué	middle school (the equivalent of junior and senior high school)

UNIT 3 TARGET LIST

1.	Nĭ chūqu a!	Oh, you're going out!
	Wŏ xiăng chūqu măi jibĕn shū.	I thought I would go out to buy a few books.
2.	Láojià, năr yŏu mài shūde?	Excuse me, where is there a place to buy books?
	Wángfŭjĭng Dàjiē yŏu yige Xīnhuá Shūdiàn, hĕn dà.	There is a New China Bookstore on Wángfŭjĭng Boulevard that is very large.
3.	Láojià, Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr yuăn ma?	Excuse me. Is the New China Bookstore far from here?
	Bù yuăn, hĕn jìn.	It's not far; it's very close.
4.	Zĕnme qù? Zŏuzhe qù kéyi ma?	How do I go? Is it possible to get there by walking?
	Zŏuzhe qù kéyi.	It's possible to get there by walking.
5.	Zŏu duó yuăn?	How far do I go?
	Zŏu bù yuăn, lùdōngde dìyīge dàlóu jiù shi Xīnhuá Shūdiàn.	Go a short distance, and the first building on the east side of the street is the New China Bookstore.
6.	Dāo Xīnhuá Shūdiàn qù, zĕnme zŏu?	How do I get to the New China Bookstore?
	Cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo bĕi guăi, jiù shi Wángfŭjĭng Dàjiē.	You go out the entrance, turn to the north, and that's Wángfŭjĭng Boulevard.
7.	Láojià, nèige dàlóu shi Xīnhuá Shūdiàn ma?	Excuse me, is that building the New China Bookstore?
	Shì.	Yes.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

8.	zhuăn	to turn
9.	chūlai	to come out
10.	lùxī	the west side of the street
11.	lùbĕi	the north side of the street
12.	lùnán	the south side of the street

13.	bǎihuò gōngsī	department store
14.	Bǎihuò Dàlóu	(name of a department store in Běijīng)
15.	shàngbianr (shàngbian)	above; the top, the upper part
16.	xiàbianr (xiàbian)	below, under; the bottom, the lower part
17.	dǐxia	underneath; the underneath
18.	zhōngjiānr (zhōngjiànr) (zhōngjiān)	the middle, the space in between
19.	pángbiānr (pángbiān)	beside, next to, alongside of; the side

UNIT 4 TARGET LIST

1.	Qǐngwèn, cāntīng zài náli?	May I ask, where is the dining room?
	Zuò diàntī dào èrlóu.	Take the elevator to the second floor.
	Xiàle diàntī, jiù kànjian le.	When you have gotten off the elevator, then you'll see it.
2.	Qǐngwèn, nǐmen zhèli yǒu meiyou lǐfǎde dìfàng?	May I ask, is there a place to get a haircut here?
	Yǒu. Xià lóu, zuǒbian jiù shì.	Yes. Go downstairs, and it's (just) on the left.
3.	Jǐlóu mài dìtú?	On what floor are maps sold?
	Èrlóu.	The second floor.
	Zěnme zǒu?	How do I get there (go)?
	Wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu. Shàng lóu, yòubian jiù shi mài dìtúde.	Go straight to the back. Go up the stairs, and the map department is (just) on the right.
4.	Xǐshǒujiān zài náli?	Where is the washroom?
	Zài nàli. Wàng lǐ zǒu, jiù kànjian le.	It's over there. Go all the way in, and then you'll see it.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

5.	qián	front, ahead
6.	duìmiàn (duìmiànr)	the side facing; across from, opposite, facing
7.	zhèbian (zhèibianr)	this way, this side
8.	nàbian (nèibianr)	that way, that side
9.	lóutī	staircase, stairway, stairs
10.	zǒuláng	corridor
11.	cèsuǒ	toilet, rest room
12.	jìn	to enter
13.	-tou	end (occurs in place words)
14.	-mian(r)	surface (occurs in place words)

UNIT 5 TARGET LIST

1. Duìbuqǐ.	Excuse me.
Nǐ yǒu shénme shì a?	What can I do for you?
2. Nǐ zhǎo shénme dìfang?	What place are you looking for?
Wǒ zhǎo Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn, Wǔshisìxiàng.	I am looking for Lane 54 of Nánjīng East Road, Section 1.
3. Nǐ wàng nàbian zǒu.	You go that way.
Guò sāntiáo jiē, jiù shi Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn.	Cross three streets, and that's Nánjīng East Road, Section 1.
Dàole Yíduàn yǐhòu, qǐng zài wèn biéren ba.	After you have gotten to Section 1, please ask someone else.
4. Qǐngwèn, Wǔnòng zài náli?	May I ask, where is Alley 5?
Nǐ zài wàng qián zǒu yìdiǎn.	You walk (straight) ahead a little farther.
Yòubian dìyīge lùkǒu jiù shi Wǔnòng.	The first intersection on the right is Alley 5.
5. Qǐngwèn zhètiáo lù shì shénme lù?	May I ask, what road is this?
Zhè shi Zhōngshān Běilù.	This is Zhōngshān North Road.
Òu, wǒ zǒucuò le.	Oh, I went the wrong way.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

6. hútong (hútòngr)	a narrow street, a lane (Běijīng)
7. mén (ménr)	gate, door
8. ménkǒu (ménkǒur)	doorway, gateway, entrance
9. qiáo	bridge
10. tiānqiáo	pedestrian overpass
11. dìxià xíngrén dào	pedestrian underground walkway

UNIT 1

REFERENCE LIST

(in Taipei)

1.	A:	Nĭ dào năli qù?	Where are you going?
	B:	Wŏ dào kāfēitīng qù.	I'm going to a coffeehouse.
2.	B:	Nĭ zhīdao bu zhidao Huámĕi Kāfēitīng?	Do you know of the Huámĕi Coffeehouse?
	A:	Bù zhīdào.	No, I don't.
3.	A:	Dào nàli qù, zĕnme zŏu?	How do I get there?
4.	C:	Cóng zhèli wàng zuŏ zŏu.	From here you go to the left.
5.	C:	Dàole lùkŏu, zài wàng yòu zŏu.	When you have reached the intersection, then you go to the right.
6.	C:	Dàole lùkŏu, zài wàng yòu zŏu, jiù dào le.	When you have reached the intersection, then you go to the right, and then you're there.
7.	A:	Wŏ xiān wàng zuŏ zŏu, duì bu duì?	First I go to the left. Is that correct?
	C:	Duì le.	That's correct.
8.	A:	Ránhòu ne?	And after that?
	C:	Ránhòu, dàole lùkŏu, zài wàng yòu zŏu.	After that, when you have reached the intersection, then you go to the right.
	A:	Hăo, wŏ zhīdao le. Xièxie.	Good, I've got it now. Thank you.
9.	A:	Qĭngwèn, cóng zhèli dào yínháng qù, wàng yòu zŏu, duì bu duì?	May I ask, to get from here to the bank you go to the right. Is that correct?
	D:	Bú shi, cóng zhèli yìzhí zŏu.	No, from here you go straight.

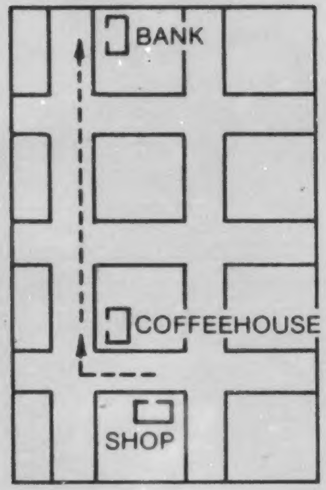
ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

10.	fànguǎnzi (fànguǎnr)	restaurant
11.	shāngdiàn	store, shop (Taipei)
12.	pùzi	store, shop (Běijīng)
13.	xuéxiào	school
14.	fángzi	house
15.	xiàng	towards

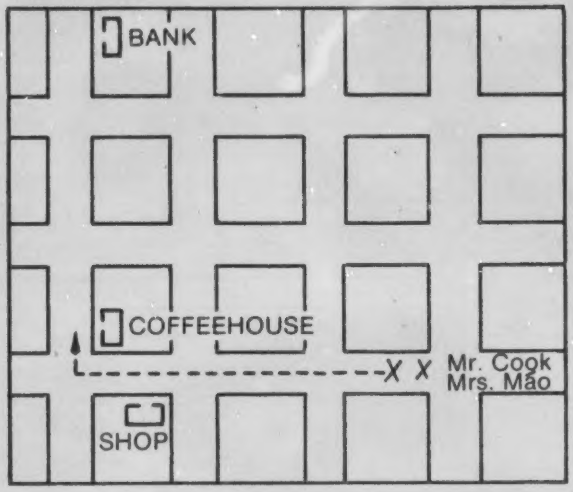
Snack stands in Taipei

MAPS FOR C-1 TAPE

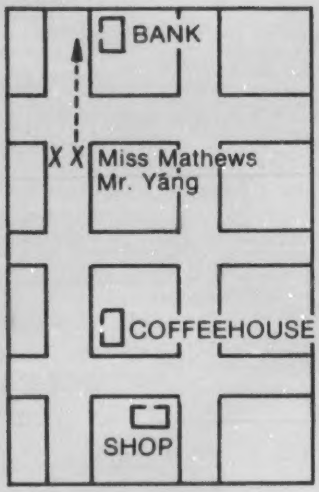
DISPLAY I


BANK
COFFEEHOUSE
SHOP

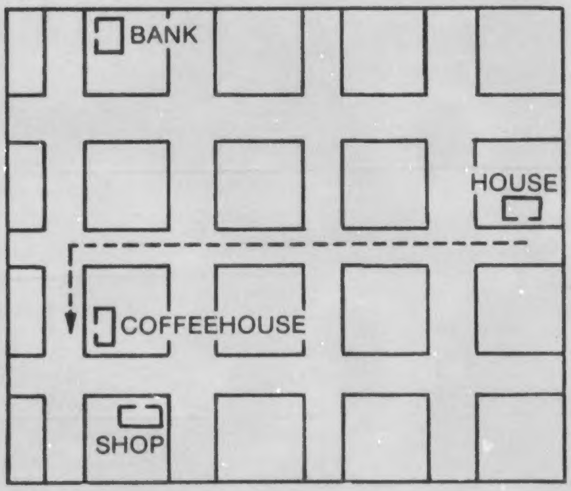
DISPLAY III


BANK
COFFEEHOUSE
X X
Mr. Cook
Mrs. Mao
SHOP

DISPLAY II


BANK
X X
Miss Mathews
Mr. Yang
COFFEEHOUSE
SHOP

DISPLAY IV


BANK
HOUSE
COFFEEHOUSE
SHOP

VOCABULARY

cóng	from
dào	to, towards
duì	to be correct
fànguǎnr	restaurant (Běijīng)
fànguǎnzi	restaurant (Taipei)
fángzi	house
Huáměi Kāfēitīng	Huáměi Coffeehouse (Taipei)
jiù	then
kāfēitīng	coffeehouse
lùkǒu(r)	intersection
pùzi	store, shop (Běijīng)
qù	to go
ránhòu	afterwards, after that
shāngdiàn	store, shop (Taipei)
wàng (wǎng)	to, towards
xiān	first; ahead of time
xiàng	towards
xuéxiào	school
yìzhí	straight
yòu	right (direction)
zài	then (in commands)
zhīdao	to know
zǒu	to go
zuǒ	left (direction)

(introduced on C-2 and P-2 tapes)

fāngbian	to be convenient
hái bù yídìng	not yet certain
jīngguo	by way of, via
kāi xué	school starts (literally, "open school")

REFERENCE NOTES

1.	A: Nǐ dào nǎli qù?	Where are you going?
	B: Wǒ dào kāfēitīng qù.	I'm going to a coffeehouse.

Notes on No. 1

Qù is used as the verb "to go" when there is a destination implied or stated, as in "going to the country" and "going somewhere." The verb zǒu, "to leave," is used for sentences such as "I'm going (leaving) now," Wǒ xiànzài zǒu le. Wǒ xiànzài qù le means "I'm going there now," implying the destination "there."

Wǒ dào Shànghǎi qù.	I am going to Shànghǎi.
Tā yě qù.	He is going there too.

Because qù is an action verb, it is made negative with bù except when you are talking about completed action. Here are some examples of qù used in various aspects:

Tā bú qù.	He is not going.
Tā zuótiān méi qù.	He did not go yesterday. (COMPLETED ACTION)
Tā xiànzài bú qù le.	Now he is not going. (Originally, he was going to go. NEW SITUATION)
Tā méi qùguo.	He has never gone there.

Dào...qù: In this exchange dào is not the full verb meaning "to arrive," but is the prepositional verb "to." The prepositional verb phrase beginning with dào indicates the destination. Notice that prepositional verb phrases in Chinese precede the main verb, while in English they usually follow the verb.

Tā zài Xiānggǎng zhùle sāntiān.	She stayed in Hong Kong three days.
Qǐng ni gěi wo huànhuan.	Please change it for me.
Wǒ dào kāfēitīng qù.	I'm going to a coffeehouse.

A prepositional verb is always followed by a noun or noun phrase that is its object.

Kāfēitīng, "coffeehouse": Some people say that the coffeehouse was a European concept first adopted by the Japanese and then transplanted to Taiwan. Coffeehouses in Taiwan are comfortable, leisurely places where a person can linger over a cup of something and talk with a friend for hours, to a background of recorded light music. Some coffeehouses have become quite cosmopolitan, offering a dozen kinds of coffee in addition to a variety of fruit drinks and soft drinks. Sometimes there may also be a short menu including items such as fried rice, noodles, sandwiches, hamburgers, and ice cream.

2.	B:	Nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao Huáměi Kāfēitīng?	Do you know of the Huáměi Coffeehouse?
	A:	Bù zhīdào.	No, I don't.

Notes on No. 2

The verb zhīdao means "to know" or "to know of." Another verb, rènshi, also translates into English as "to know," but in the sense of "to be acquainted with," "to recognize."

Notice that in the affirmative the verb zhīdao ends in a Neutral tone, while in the negative it ends in a Falling tone (bù zhīdào).

The verb zhīdao is a state verb. State verbs describe qualities or conditions (dà, "to be large"; guì, "to be expensive"). Knowing (zhīdao), wanting (xiǎng or yào), and liking (xǐhuan) are all considered states. As a state verb, zhīdao can only be made negative with bù (never méi). Zhīdao can be used with the marker le for new situations.

Tā yǐqián bù zhīdào zěnme dào zhèr lái, xiànzài zhīdao le.	He didn't know how to get here before, but now he knows.
Tā qùnián hái bù zhīdào tā yǐhòu yào dào Zhōngguo qù.	Last year he didn't know that he would later be going to China.

Huáměi: Huá means "glorious." It is one of the syllables often used to refer to China. The syllable měi, "beautiful," is used in compounds to refer to America (as in Měiguó).

3. A: Dào nàli qù, zěnme zǒu? How do I get there?

Notes on No. 3

Earlier, you learned the verb *zǒu* as "to leave." In the sentence above, *zǒu* means "to go" in the sense of "to go by way of," "to take a route." *Zǒu* also means "to walk."

Tā hái méi zǒu, hái zài zhèr kàn bào ne.	He hasn't left yet. He is still here reading the paper.
Wǒmen zǒu zhèige mén yě kéyi.	We can also go through this door.
Háizi hái bú huì zǒu.	The baby can't yet walk.

Dào nàli qù, zěnme zǒu? This sentence consists of a topic, *dào nàli qù*, "to go to that place," followed by a question about that topic, *zěnme zǒu*? "how do I go?" Both the topic and the question have the structure of full sentences:

Dào	nàli	qù,	zěnme	zǒu?
(To	there	go,	how	go?)

Translated as "to go," *qù* focuses on the destination, while *zǒu* focuses on the route taken to get there.

4. C: Cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ zǒu. From here you go to the left.

Notes on No. 4

Cóng, "from": Unlike the other prepositional verbs you have learned, *cóng* is only rarely used as a full verb in modern Chinese. Most frequently, it is used prepositionally.

Wàng, "to," "towards": The prepositional verbs *wàng* and *dào* may both be translated as "to." *Wàng*, however, means simply "towards" or "in the direction of," while *dào* implies eventual arrival at a destination. *Wàng* may also be pronounced *wǎng*.

Notice that two prepositional verb phrases occur before the main verb.

PREPOSITIONAL VERB AND NOUN	PREPOSITIONAL VERB AND NOUN	MAIN VERB
Cóng zhèli	wàng zuǒ	zǒu.

5. C: Dàole lùkǒu, zài wàng yòu zǒu.	When you have reached the intersection, then you go to the right.

Notes on No. 5

Lùkǒu, "intersection": Literally, this word means "road opening."

Completion -le in the sentence above marks completed action but not past tense. It shows the completion of one action in the sentence in relation to another but does not indicate whether that action is past, present, or future. In the English translation, the time relationship between the two actions is indicated by the word "when": "When you have reached the intersection, then you go to the right." In a more formal style, the sentence could be translated as "Having reached the intersection, you go to the right."

The adverb zài is used for "then" in commands and suggestions. It usually indicates the next step in a suggested sequence of actions, as in "First you go left, and then, when you have reached the intersection, you go right."

6. C: Dàole lùkǒu, zài wàng yòu zǒu, jiù dào le.	When you have reached the intersection, then you go to the right, and then you're there.

Notes on No. 6

Jiù: You have learned that jiù can mean "right," "precisely," "just," referring to where something is, as in Jiù zài zhèli, "They're right here."

You also know that it can mean "immediately," "right away," as in *Wǒ jiù lái*, "I'll be right back." A third meaning was introduced: "only," a synonym of *zhǐ*, as in *Jiù yǒu wǒ fùqin, mǔqin*, "There's only my father and mother." Now you see *jiù* used to mean "then." It stresses the immediacy of one thing happening after another: "and then right away."

You have learned two words that may be translated as "then": *zài* and *jiù*. However, the two words are not used interchangeably. *Jiù* is used to stress how soon one event happened after another. *Zài* is used to stress how two actions are to be sequenced in time.

The marker *le* in *jiù dào le* is combined *le*.

7.	A:	Wǒ xiān wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu dui?	First I go to the left. Is that correct?
	C:	Duì le.	That's correct.

Notes on No. 7

Xiān, "first," is an adverb. It must therefore come after the subject and before the verb, as in *Nǐ xiān zǒu*, "You go first." (In English "first" may be placed either before the subject or after the verb, as in "First you go" and "You go first." But in Chinese *xiān* must be placed between the subject and the verb.)

Dìyī also means "first," but *dìyī* and *xiān* are not interchangeable. *Dìyī* modifies nouns, whereas *xiān* modifies verbs. *Dìyī* refers to the first in a sequence, in other words, the "number one" something-or-other. *Xiān* refers to doing something first, before doing a second thing.

Duì bu dui: This phrase is used when you expect your listener to agree with you but want to make sure.

8.	A:	Ránhòu ne?	And after that?
	C:	Ránhòu, dàole lùkǒu, zài wàng yòu zǒu.	After that, when you have reached the intersection, then you go to the right.
	A:	Hǎo, wǒ zhīdao le. Xièxie.	Good, I've got it now. Thank you.

Notes on No. 8

Ránhòu, "(and) after that": When giving directions or describing a contemplated series of steps, *ránhòu* is often followed by *zài*.

Wǒ yào dào Xiānggǎng qù sāntiān, ránhòu zài qù Shànghǎi.	I'm going to go to Hong Kong for three days, and then go to Shànghǎi.

Zhīdao le means "I know now" in the sense of "Before, I didn't know how to get there, but now I know." (The expression is translated into more idiomatic English as "I've got it now.") The state verb *zhīdao* plus new-situation *le* indicate a change from not knowing to knowing. Here is another example of *zhīdao* and new-situation *le*:

Wǒ cóngqián bù zhīdào tā zhù zai nǎli, xiànzài zhīdao le.	Before, I didn't know where he lived, but now I know.

9.	A:	Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèli dào yínháng qù, wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu dui?	May I ask, to get from here to the bank you go to the right. Is that correct?
	D:	Bú shi, cóng zhèli yìzhí zǒu.	No, from here you go straight.

Note on No. 9

Bú shi: Notice that the question in exchange 9 is not answered with *bú duì*. The expression *bú duì* is as rude in Chinese as "you're wrong" is in English (except when a teacher is correcting a student).

10.	fànguǎnzi (fànguǎnr)	restaurant
11.	shāngdiàn	store, shop (Taipei)
12.	pùzi	store, shop (Běijīng)
13.	xuéxiào	school
14.	fángzi	house
15.	xiàng	towards

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

Fànguǎnzi, "restaurant": *Fàndiàn* refers to either a restaurant or a hotel. *Fànguǎnzi* means "restaurant." The usual Běijīng version of this word is *fànguǎnr* (pronounced as if written *fànguǎr*). The ending *-r* is used frequently in Běijīng but in Taiwan is rarely used by Taiwanese speakers of Standard Chinese.

Adding *-r* to a syllable usually causes the pronunciation of the base syllable to change. It will be easier and more practical for you to examine each *-r* word as it is introduced in the course of study.

You have already learned the word *yìdiǎnr*, which is actually pronounced *yìdiǎr*. From the examples *yìdiǎnr* and *fànguǎnr* you can see that when *-r* is added to a syllable that ends with *n*, the /n/ sound disappears completely.

Although adding *-r* causes pronunciation changes in most syllables, these changes are not represented in the Pinyin system of romanization. Pinyin spelling rules state that the ending *-r* should simply be tacked on at the end of a syllable, regardless of whether or not the pronunciation of the base syllable is changed by this addition.

Xiàng, "towards": The prepositional verb *xiàng* may be used in most of the same ways that *wàng* is used. You will probably hear *wàng* (*wǎng*) more frequently than the literary-sounding *xiàng*.

Dàole lùkǒu, xiàng zuǒ zǒu.	When you get to the intersection, go to the left.

DRILLS

A. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Tā qù. (He is going.)	(cue) xuéxiào	You: Tā dào xuéxiào qù. (He is going to school.)
2.	Wáng Tóngzhì qù.	Jiānádà	Wáng Tóngzhì dào Jiānádà qù.
3.	Tā lái.	zhèli	Tā dào zhèli lái.
4.	Lǐ Xiānsheng qù.	xuéxiào	Lǐ Xiānsheng dào xuéxiào qù.
5.	Chén Nǚshì lái.	Běijīng	Chén Nǚshì dào Běijīng qù.
6.	Gāo Tóngzhì qù.	yóuzhèngjú	Gāo Tóngzhì dào yóuzhèngjú qù.
7.	Sūn Fūren qù.	nǎli	Sūn Fūren dào nǎli qù?

B. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Tā dào nǎli qù? (Where is he going?)	(cue) nàge fànguǎnzi	You: Tā dào nàge fànguǎnzi qù. (He is going to that restaurant.)
2.	Chén Xiānsheng dào nǎli qù?	Táiwān Yínháng	Chén Xiānsheng dào Táiwān Yínháng qù.
3.	Jiǎng Tàitai dào nǎli qù?	xuéxiào	Jiǎng Tàitai dào xuéxiào qù.
4.	Zhāng Xiǎojiě dào nǎli qù?	nàge fànguǎnzi	Zhāng Xiǎojiě dào nàge fànguǎnzi qù.
5.	Gāo Xiānsheng dào nǎli qù?	wǔguānchù	Gāo Xiānsheng dào wǔguānchù qù.
6.	Liú Xiānsheng dào nǎli qù?	Huáměi Kāfēitīng	Liú Xiānsheng dào Huáměi Kāfēitīng qù.
7.	Lín Nǚshì dào nǎli qù?	Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn	Lín Nǚshì dào Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn qù.

133

C. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Nǐ zhīdao nèige shāngdiàn ma? (Do you know of that store?)	You: Nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao nèige shāngdiàn? (Do you know of that store or not?)
2.	Nǐ zhīdao nèige xuéxiào ma?	Nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao nèige xuéxiào?
3.	Tā zhīdao Táiwān Yínháng ma?	Tā zhīdao bu zhidao Táiwān Yínháng?
4.	Lín Xiānsheng zhīdao nèige shāngdiàn ma?	Lín Xiānsheng zhīdao bu zhidao nèige shāngdiàn?
5.	Wáng Tàitai zhīdao zhège fànguǎnzi ma?	Wáng Tàitai zhīdao bu zhidao zhège fànguǎnzi?
6.	Yáng Xiǎojiě zhīdao Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn ma?	Yáng Xiǎojiě zhīdao bu zhidao Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn?
7.	Zhào Xiānsheng zhīdao Jīnrì Gōngsī ma?	Zhào Xiānsheng zhīdao bu zhidao Jīnrì Gōngsī?

D. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao Huáměi Kāfēitīng? (cue) yes (Do you know of the Huáměi Coffeehouse?)	You: Zhīdao, Huáměi Kāfēitīng zài wǒmen nàr. (Yes, the Huáměi Coffeehouse is over there by us.)
OR	Nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao Huáměi Kāfēitīng? (cue) no (Do you know of the Huáměi Coffeehouse?)	Duìbuqǐ, wǒ bù zhīdào. (I'm sorry, I don't know [it].)
2.	Nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao Dìyī Gōngsī? no	Duìbuqǐ, wǒ bù zhīdào.
3.	Nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao wǔguānchù? yes	Zhīdao, wǔguānchù zài wǒmen nàr.
4.	Nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao Táiwān Dàxué? no	Duìbuqǐ, wǒ bù zhīdào.

5.	Nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao Měiguo Xīnwénchù? yes	Zhīdao, Měiguo Xīnwénchù zài wǒmen nàr.
6.	Nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao nàge fànguǎnzi? no	Duìbuqǐ, wǒ bù zhīdào.

E. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Dào nàli qù. (Go there.)	You: Qǐngwèn, dào nàli qù, zěnme zǒu? (May I ask, how do I get there?)
2.	Dào fànguǎnzi qù.	Qǐngwèn, dào fànguǎnzi qù, zěnme zǒu?
3.	Dào yóuzhèngjú qù.	Qǐngwèn, dào yóuzhèngjú qù, zěnme zǒu?
4.	Dào shāngdiàn qù.	Qǐngwèn, dào shāngdiàn qù, zěnme zǒu?
5.	Dào Táiwān Dàxué qù.	Qǐngwèn, dào Táiwān Dàxué qù, zěnme zǒu?
6.	Dào Měiguo Xīnwénchù qù.	Qǐngwèn, dào Měiguo Xīnwénchù qù, zěnme zǒu?
7.	Dào Huáměi Kāfēitīng qù.	Qǐngwèn, dào Huáměi Kāfēitīng qù, zěnme zǒu?

F. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Nǐ zhīdao dào Huáměi Kāfēitīng qù zěnme zǒu ma? (Do you know how to get to the Huáměi Coffeehouse?)	You: Nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao dào Huáměi Kāfēitīng qù zěnme zǒu? (Do you know how to get to the Huáměi Coffeehouse or not?)
2.	Nǐ zhīdao dào Táiwān Yínháng qù zěnme zǒu ma?	Nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao dào Táiwān Yínháng qù zěnme zǒu?
3.	Nǐ zhīdao dào nàge fànguǎnzi qù zěnme zǒu ma?	Nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao dào nàge fànguǎnzi qù zěnme zǒu?
4.	Nǐ zhīdao dào nèige shāngdiàn qù zěnme zǒu ma?	Nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao dào nèige shāngdiàn qù zěnme zǒu?
5.	Nǐ zhīdao dào nàge xuéxiào qù zěnme zǒu ma?	Nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao dào nàge xuéxiào qù zěnme zǒu?
6.	Nǐ zhīdao dào kāfēitīng qù zěnme zǒu ma?	Nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao dào kāfēitīng qù zěnme zǒu?
7.	Nǐ zhīdao dào wǔguānchù qù zěnme zǒu ma?	Nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao dào wǔguānchù qù zěnme zǒu?

G. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Xiān wàng zuǒ zǒu, zài wàng yòu zǒu. (cue) lùkǒu (First go to the left; then go to the right.)	You: Xiān wàng zuǒ zǒu, dàole lùkǒu zài wàng yòu zǒu. (First go to the left; when you get to the corner, go to the right.)
2.	Xiān wàng yòu zǒu, zài wàng zuǒ zǒu. Dūnhuà Lù	Xiān wàng yòu zǒu, dàole Dūnhuà Lù zài wàng zuǒ zǒu.
3.	Xiān yìzhí zǒu, zài wàng zuǒ zǒu. Zhōngshān Běilù	Xiān yìzhí zǒu, dàole Zhōngshān Běilù zài wàng zuǒ zǒu.
4.	Xiān wàng zuǒ zǒu, zài wàng yòu zǒu. dìèrge lùkǒu	Xiān wàng zuǒ zǒu, dàole dìèrge lùkǒu zài wàng yòu zǒu.

5. Xiān wàng yòu zǒu, zài wàng zuǒ zǒu. dìsānge lùkǒu	Xiān wàng yòu zǒu, dàole dìsānge lùkǒu zài wàng zuǒ zǒu.
6. Xiān yìzhí zǒu, zài wàng yòu zǒu. Zhōnghuá Lù	Xiān yìzhí zǒu, dàole Zhōnghuá Lù zài wàng yòu zǒu.
7. Xiān wàng zuǒ zǒu, zài wàng yòu zǒu. Rénài Lù	Xiān wàng zuǒ zǒu, dàole Rénài Lù zài wàng yòu zǒu.

H. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Cóng zhèli yìzhí zǒu, duì bu dui? (cue) nàli (You go straight from here. Is that correct?)	You: Cóng zhèli dào nàli qù, yìzhí zǒu, duì bu dui? (To get from here to there you go straight. Is that correct?)
2. Cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu dui? nǐ jiā	Cóng zhèli dào nǐ jiā qù, wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu dui?
3. Cóng zhèli yìzhí zǒu, duì bu dui? fànguǎnzi	Cóng zhèli dào fànguǎnzi qù, yìzhí zǒu, duì bu dui?
4. Cóng zhèli wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu dui? kāfēitīng	Cóng zhèli dào kāfēitīng qù, wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu dui?
5. Cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu dui? yóuzhèngjú	Cóng zhèli dào yóuzhèngjú qù, wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu dui?
6. Cóng zhèli yìzhí zǒu, duì bu dui? wǔguānchù	Cóng zhèli dào wǔguānchù qù, yìzhí zǒu, duì bu dui?
7. Cóng zhèli wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu dui? xuéxiào	Cóng zhèli dào xuéxiào qù, wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu dui?

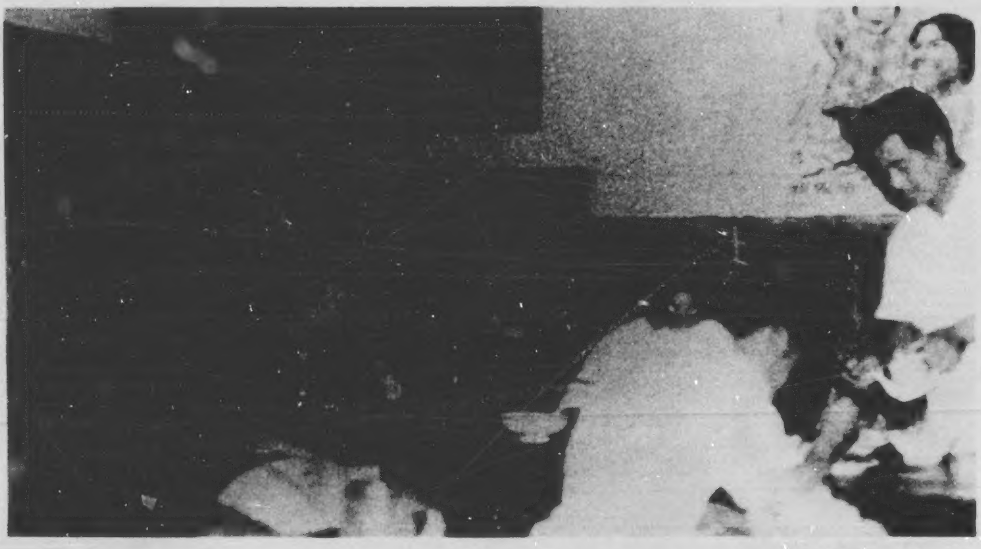
I. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Wǒ zhīdao Huáměi Kāfēitīng. (cue) yǒu (I know of the Huáměi Coffeehouse.)	You: Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèli dào Huáměi Kāfēitīng qù wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì? (May I ask, you go to the right to get to the Huáměi Coffeehouse. Is that correct?)
2.	Wǒ zhīdao nàge fànguǎnzi. zuǒ	Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèli dào nàge fànguǎnzi qù wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?
3.	Wǒ zhīdao nàge yóuzhèngjú. yǒu	Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèli dào nàge yóuzhèngjú qù wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì?
4.	Wǒ zhīdao Táiwān Yínháng. zuǒ	Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèli dào Táiwān Yínháng qù wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?
5.	Wǒ zhīdao wǔguānchù. yìzhí	Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèli dào wǔguānchù qù yìzhí zǒu, duì bu duì?
6.	Wǒ zhīdao Měiguo xuéxiào. zuǒ	Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèli dào Měiguo xuéxiào qù wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?
7.	Wǒ zhīdao nàge shāngdiàn. yìzhí	Qǐngwèn. cóng zhèli dào nège shāngdiàn qù yìzhí zǒu, duì bu duì?

J. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Wǒ zhīdao Huáměi Kāfēitīng. (cue) zěnme zǒu (I know of the Huáměi Coffeehouse.)	You: Qǐngwèn, dào Huáměi Kāfēitīng qù zěnme zǒu? (May I ask, how do I get to the Huáměi Coffeehouse?)
OR	Wǒ zhīdao Huáměi Kāfēitīng. (cue) yòu (I know of the Huáměi Coffeehouse.)	Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèli dào Huáměi Kāfēitīng qù, wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì? (May I ask, I go to the right from here to get to the Huáměi Coffeehouse. Is that correct?)

2. Wǒ zhīdao nàge xuéxiào. zěnme zǒu	Qǐngwèn, dào nàge xuéxiào qù zěnme zǒu?
3. Wǒ zhīdao nàge shāngdiàn. zuǒ	Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèli dào nàge shāngdiàn wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu dui?
4. Wǒ zhīdao Táiwān Yínháng. yòu	Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèli dào Táiwān Yínháng qù, wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu dui?
5. Wǒ zhīdao wǔguānchù. zěnme zǒu	Qǐngwèn, dào wǔguānchù qù zěnme zǒu?
6. Wǒ zhīdao nàge fànguǎnzi. zuǒ	Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèli dào nàge fànguǎnzi qù wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu dui?



Interior of a luncheon stand off the beaten path in Shànghǎi

UNIT 2

REFERENCE LIST

1.	A:	Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn shì bu shi zài zhèr fùjìn?	Is the Dōngdān Movie Theater in this area?
	B:	Shì. Zài zhèr fùjìn.	Yes. It's in this area.
2.	A:	Nǐ zhīdao diànyǐngyuàn fùjìn yǒu meiyou yínháng?	Do you know whether there is a bank in the vicinity of the theater?
	B:	Yǒu. Diànyǐngyuàn fùjìn yǒu (yige) yínháng.	Yes. There is a bank in the vicinity of the movie theater.
3.	A:	Nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao yínháng shénme shíhou guān mén?	Do you know at what time the bank closes?
4.	A:	Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnme zǒu?	How do I get there from here?
	B:	Chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng dōng zǒu.	When you have gone out of the hotel, walk to the east.
5.	B:	Dàole dìèrge lùkǒur, běibianr shi Dōngdān Càishichǎng. Nánbianr shi Dōngdān Gōngyuán.	When you have reached the second intersection, on the north side is the Dōngdān Market. On the south side is Dōngdān Park.
6.	B:	Diànyǐngyuàn jiù zài Dōngdān Càishichǎngde xībianr.	The movie theater is just on the west side of the Dōngdān Market.
7.*	A:	Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng dōng zǒu, duì bu dui?	When I have gone out of the hotel, I walk to the east. Is that correct?
	B:	Duì le.	That's correct.
8.*	A:	Hǎo, běibianr shi Dōngdān Càishichǎng. Nánbianr ne?	Okay, on the north side is the Dōngdān Market. How about on the south side?
	B:	Nánbianr shi Dōngdān Gōngyuán.	On the south side is Dōngdān Park.
9.*	A:	Diànyǐngyuàn jiù zài càishichǎngde xībianr shì bu shi?	The movie theater is just on the west side of the market, is that it?
	B:	Shì.	Yes.

---

*This exchange occurs on the P-1 tape only.

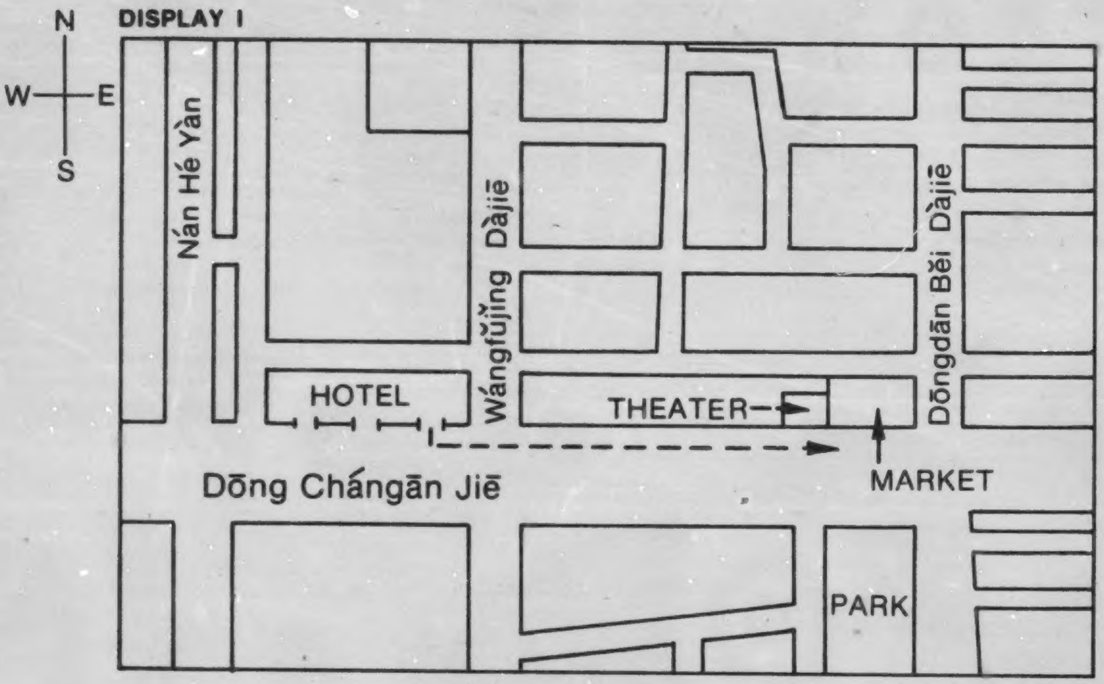
10.	A:	Qù kàn diànyǐng yǐqián wǒ xiān qù kàn yíge péngyou.	Before I go to see the movie, I am first going to visit a friend.
11.	A:	Fàndiàn lǐbianr yǒu meiyou mài tángde?	Is there a place to buy candy in the hotel?
	B:	Yǒu. Yǒu yige xiǎomàibù. Zài nèibianr.	Yes. There's a variety shop. It's over there.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

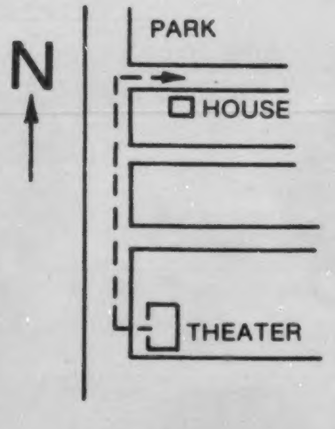
12.	wàibianr (wàibian)	outside
13.	yǐhòu	after
14.	yòubianr (yòubian)	right side
15.	zuǒbianr (zuǒbian)	left side
16.	xiǎoxué	elementary school
17.	zhōngxué	middle school (the equivalent of junior and senior high school)

MAPS FOR C-1 TAPE

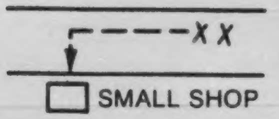
DISPLAY I


N
W
E
S
Nán Hé Yàn
Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē
Dōngdān Běi Dàjiē
HOTEL
THEATER
MARKET
Dōng Chángān Jiē
PARK

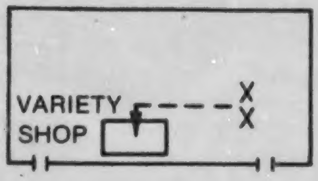
DISPLAY II


N
PARK
HOUSE
THEATER

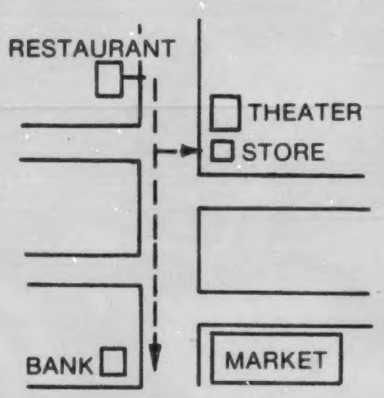
DISPLAY III


X X
SMALL SHOP

DISPLAY IV


VARIETY SHOP
X
X

DISPLAY V

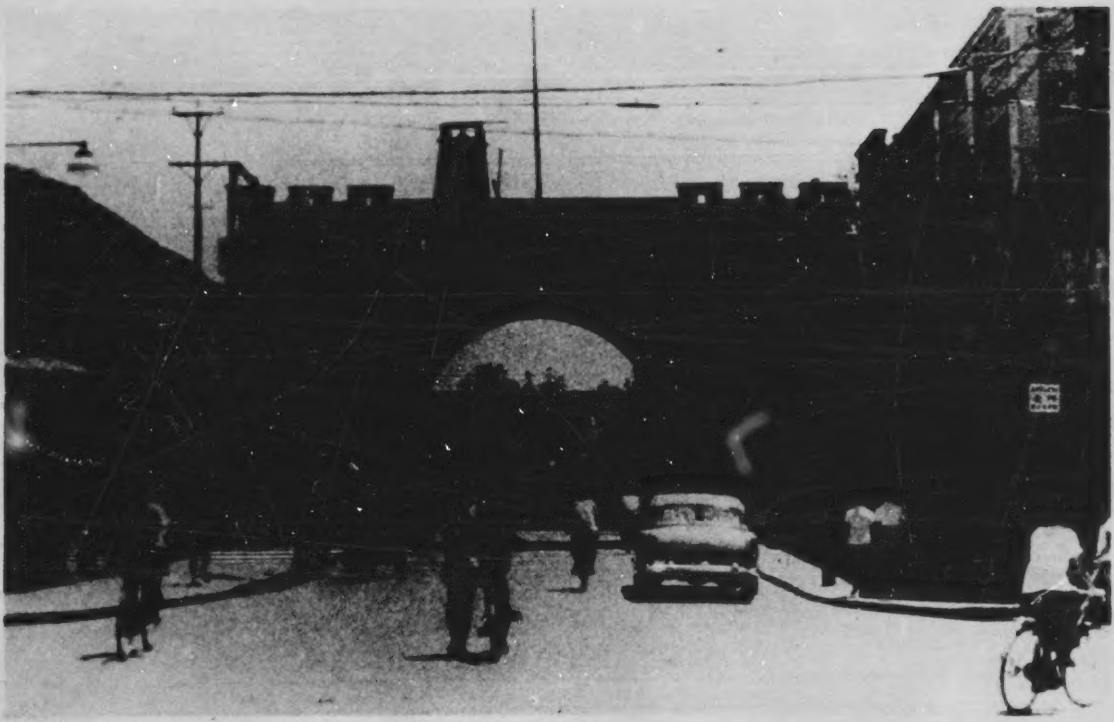

RESTAURANT
THEATER
STORE
BANK
MARKET

VOCABULARY

běi	north
běibian(r)	north side
-bianr (-bian)	side, edge (used in place words)
càishichǎng	market
chū	to go out, to exit
diànyǐng(r)	movie, film
diànyǐngyuàn	movie theater
dōng	east
dōngbian(r)	east side
Dōngdān	(a neighborhood in Běijīng)
fùjìn	area, vicinity
gōngyuán	park
lǐ	inside, in
lǐbianr (lǐbian)	inside
nán	south
nánbian(r)	south side
táng	candy, sugar
wàibianr (wàibian)	outside
Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē	Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard (Běijīng)
xī	west
xiǎomàibù	variety shop
xiǎoxué	elementary school
xībian(r)	west side
yǐhòu	after
yǐqián	before
yòubianr (yòubian)	right side
zhōngxué	middle school (the equivalent of junior and senior high school)
zuǒbianr (zuǒbian)	left side

(introduced on C-2 and P-2 tapes)

bànshìchù	office
gòu	to be enough
guòle lùkǒur	having passed the intersection
nà	well, then
rè	to be hot
zǒuzou	to take a walk
zuìhǎo	it would be best that



Old city gate at Sūzhōu

REFERENCE NOTES

1.	A: Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn shì bu shi zài zhèr fùjìn?	Is the Dōngdān Movie Theater in this area?
	B: Shì. Zài zhèr fùjìn.	Yes. It's in this area.

Notes on No. 1

Dōngdān is the name of a district in Běijīng to the east and south of the Palace Museum (Gùgōng Bówuyuàn), at the intersection of Dōng Chángān Jiē and Dōngdān Běi Dàjiē. (See map of Běijīng preceding the Target Lists.)

Literally, diànyǐngyuàn means "electric-shadow hall."

Zhèr fùjìn has the structure of a possessive phrase:

zhèr	(-de)	fùjìn
(here	's	vicinity)

(The marker -de is often omitted in phrases of relative location.)

2.	A: Nǐ zhīdao diànyǐngyuàn fùjìn yǒu meiyou yínháng?	Do you know whether there is a bank in the vicinity of the movie theater?
	B: Yǒu. Diànyǐngyuàn fùjìn yǒu (yige) yínháng.	Yes. There is a bank in the vicinity of the movie theater.

Note on No. 2

Nǐ zhīdao...yǒu meiyou yíháng? could also be translated as "Do you know if there's a bank...?" When you want to ask "whether/if" in Chinese, use a yes/no-choice question.

Wǒ bù zhīdào	tā lái bu lái.
(I don't know	whether/if he's coming.)

Notice that in English the beginning of the first sentence in exchange 2 is in question form: "Do you know...?" But the Chinese is in statement form: Nǐ zhīdao.... To be perfectly logical, the Chinese would use either the question form nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao... or nǐ zhīdao...ma? But if these forms were used, the sentence would sound awkward, or even ungrammatical, to many speakers.

3. A: Nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao yínháng shénme shíhou guān mén?	Do you know at what time the bank closes?

Note on No. 3

Nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao: To ask "Do you know...?" in a question-word question, nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao and nǐ zhīdao...ma? are preferred. Nǐ zhīdao may also occur, especially in long or complex questions.

Nǐ	zhīdao	bu zhidao	tā zài nǎr?
(You	know	or not	he is where?)

"Do you know where he is?"

Nǐ	zhīdao	tā zài nǎr	ma?
(You	know	he is where?)	

"Do you know where he is?"

4.	A: Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnme zǒu?	How do I get there from here?
	B: Chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng dōng zǒu.	When you have gone out of the hotel, walk to the east.

Notes on No. 4

Chū, "to go out," "to exit": This verb is usually not used alone, but is followed by an object (chū ménr, "go out the door") or used in compound verbs such as chūqu, "to go out." (Compound verbs are introduced in the next unit.) To say that you are going out without specifying the place, you may use Wǒ zǒu le, "I'm leaving."

Zhèige: In the second sentence in exchange 4, zhèige is unstressed. It is translated as "the," not as "this." In Chinese, unstressed zhèige and nèige are used more frequently than "this" and "that" are used in English. It is often better to translate zhèige or nèige as "the." (Remember, however, that "the" is not always expressed by a word in Chinese, as in Yínháng shénme shíhou guān mén? "What time does the bank close?")

5.	B: Dàole dìèrge lùkǒur, běibianr shi Dōngdān Càishichǎng. Nánbianr shi Dōngdān Gōngyuán.	When you have reached the second intersection, on the north side is the Dōngdān Market. On the south side is Dōngdān Park.

Notes on No. 5

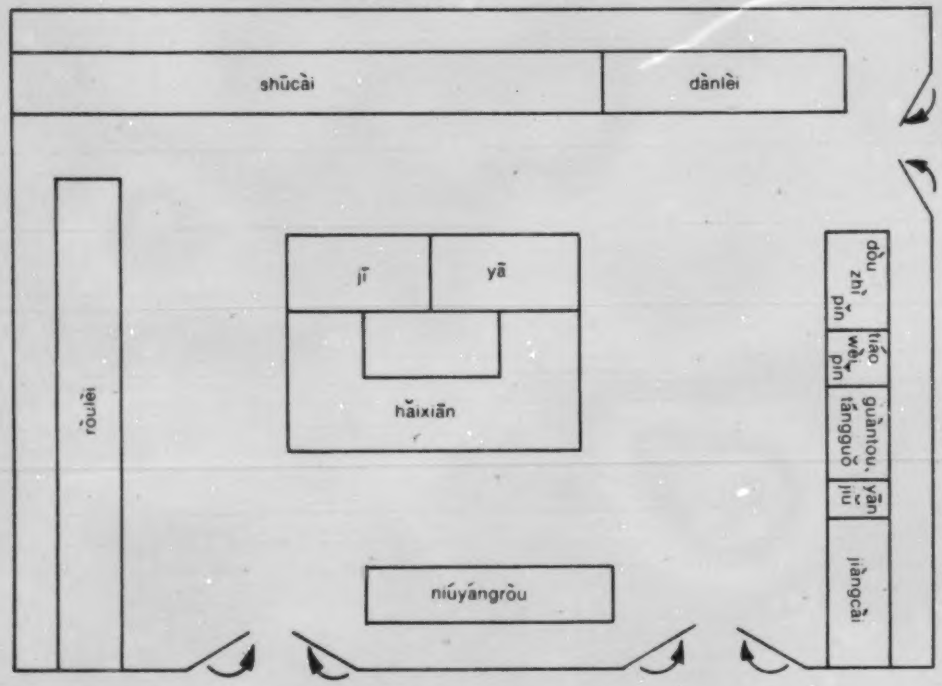
The element -bianr (-bian) means "side." When it is added to a direction word, the word becomes a place name. For instance, běibianr is a noun and names a place, as in Diànyǐngyuàn zài nèige fàndiàn běibianr, "The movie theater is on the north side of that hotel." Běi, on the other hand, names a direction, and is the form usually used with wàng, "towards": Nǐ wàng běi zǒu, "You go to the north." The other direction words (dōng, nán, xī, zuǒ, and yòu) may also be used as the name of a place (in combination with -bianr) and as the name of a direction. Remember that the ending -bianr is pronounced as if it were written -biar. (See Unit 1, Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary.)

Běibianr, nánbianr: These location words are nouns (acting as topics) in Chinese. They are translated into English as prepositional phrases (acting as adverbs).

Gōngyuán literally means "public garden." (Notice the difference in tone between *yuán*, "garden," and *yuàn*, "hall," as in *diànyǐngyuàn*, "movie hall.")

Càishichǎng: Below, in the diagram of a large *càishichǎng* in Běijīng, you will find the following sections: *shūcài* (vegetables), *dànlèi* (eggs, including chicken eggs, duck eggs, salted duck eggs, and "thousand-year-old" eggs), *dòuzhìpǐn* (bean products like bean curd, dried bean curd, bean-curd skin, deep-fried bean curd, "smelly" bean curd, fermented bean curd, bean noodles, fermented black beans, etc.), *tiáowèipǐn* (spices and flavorings), *guàntou* (canned goods), *tángguǒ* (candy), *yān* (cigarettes), *jiǔ* (wines and liquors), *jiàngcài* (pickled vegetables), *niúyángròu* (beef and lamb, available mostly to Moslems), *ròulèi* (pork, pork ribs, ground pork, and pork lard), *jī* (chicken), *yā* (duck), and *hǎixiān* (seafood).

A MARKET IN BĚIJĪNG


shūcài
dànlèi
jī
yā
hǎixiān
ròulèi
dòu zhì pǐn
tiáo wèi pǐn
guàntou, tángguǒ
yān jiǔ
jiàngcài
niúyángròu

6.	B:	Diànyǐngyuàn jiù zài Dōngdān Càishichǎngde xībianr.	The movie theater is just on the west side of the Dōngdān Market.

Notes on No. 6

Jiù, "right," "exactly," "just": In earlier material this word was translated as "right." In this sentence, jiù is translated as "just," to avoid confusion with the direction "right" (yòu).

Dōngdān Càishichǎngde xībianr, "the west side of the Dōngdān Market," or, more literally, "the Dōngdān Market's west side": Notice that this long modifying phrase is marked with -de, in contrast to zhèr fùjìn.

Direction words: The conventional Chinese order for the points on the compass is dōng, nán, xī, běi, "east, south, west, north." Direction names are a part of many Chinese place names. Here are some examples:

Húběi	"North of the (Dòngtíng) lake"
Húnán	"South of the (Dòngtíng) lake"
Héběi	"North of the (Yellow) river"
Hénán	"South of the (Yellow) river"
Shāndōng	"East of the (Tàiháng) mountains"
Shānxī	"West of the (Tàiháng) mountains"
Běijīng	"Northern capital"
Nánjīng	"Southern capital"
Táiběi	"Taiwan North"
Táinán	"Taiwan South"

7.	A:	Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng dōng zǒu, duì bu duì?	When I have gone out of the hotel, I walk to the east. Is that correct?
	B:	Duì le.	That's correct.
8.	A:	Hǎo, běibianr shi Dōngdān Càishichǎng. Nánbianr ne?	Okay, on the north side is the Dōngdān Market. How about on the south side?
	B:	Nánbianr shi Dōngdān Gōngyuán.	On the south side is Dōngdān Park.

149

9.	A:	Diànyǐngyuàn jiù zài càishichǎngde xībianr shì bu shi?	The movie theater is just on the west side of the market, is that it?
	B:	Shì.	Yes.

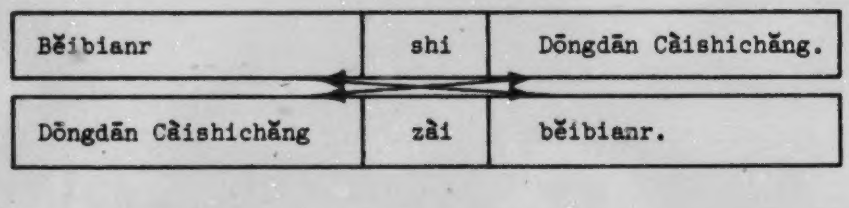
Notes on Nos. 7-9

Location words and shì, yǒu, and zài: Shì, yǒu, and zài are translated into English as some form of the verb "to be." The English translations may mask the differences in meaning among the three verbs. Shì is used for identity; zài is used for location; and yǒu is used for existence.

	REFERENCE LIST TRANSLATION	LITERAL TRANSLATION
Běibianr shi Dōngdān Càishichǎng.	(On the north side is the Dōngdān Market.)	(The north side is the Dōngdān Market.)
Diànyǐngyuàn zài Càishichǎngde xībianr.	(The movie theater is on the west side of the market.)	(The movie theater is located on the market's west side.)
Fàndiàn lǐbianr yǒu yige xiǎomàibù.	(There's a variety shop in the hotel.)	(Inside the hotel exists a variety shop.)

In the first example, it is possible to say Běibianr shi Dōngdān Càishichǎng because the market occupies the whole north side of the street. You would probably not phrase the sentence this way if you were talking about the location of a telephone booth or a newsstand.

Notice the difference in word order between sentences with shì and sentences with zài.



Běibianr	shi	Dōngdān Càishichǎng.
Dōngdān Càishichǎng	zài	běibianr.

10.	A: Qù kàn diànyǐng yǐqián, wǒ xiān qù kàn yige péngyou.	Before I go to see the movie, I am first going to visit a friend.

Notes on No. 10

Qù kàn: The verb *qù*, like the verb *lái*, is frequently followed by a phrase expressing the purpose of the action.

Yǐqián, "before": Notice that in Chinese *yǐqián* comes at the end of the clause, while in English "before" comes at the beginning.

kàn diànyǐng	*yǐqián*
before	I see the movie

Yige: When the word *yíge* is stressed, it means "one." When the word is unstressed or toneless, it means "a" or "an."

11.	A: Fàndiàn lǐbianr yǒu meiyou mài tángde?	Is there a place to buy candy in the hotel?
	B: Yǒu. Yǒu yige xiǎomàibù. Zài nèibianr.	Yes. There's a variety shop. It's over there.

Notes on No. 11

Fàndiàn lǐbianr yǒu...? This question illustrates another way in which sentences containing *zài* and *yǒu* may differ: *Zài* allows the noun to be placed at the beginning of the sentence, making the noun DEFINITE. *Yǒu* allows the noun to be placed at the end of the sentence, making the noun INDEFINITE. In English, "a/an" and "the" express the idea of indefinite and definite. In Chinese, word order is used to express the same idea.

Xiǎomàibù zài fàndiàn lǐbianr.	The variety shop is in the hotel.
Fàndiàn lǐbianr yǒu (yige) xiǎomàibù.	Inside the hotel there is a variety shop.

Unless otherwise specified, a noun before the verb is never indefinite:

Cāntīng zài nǎr?	Where is the dining room?	(DEFINITE)
Cāntīng zài zhèr.	The dining room is here.	

An indefinite noun is normally placed after the verb:

Nǎr yǒu cāntīng?	Where is there a dining room?	(INDEFINITE)
Zhèr yǒu cāntīng.	There is a dining room here.	

Mài tángde, "a place to buy candy," or, more literally, "one that sells candy": The noun modified by this phrase has been left off the end of the phrase. This expression is understood to refer to either the person who does something or the place where something is done. Mài tángde could be translated in exchange 11 as "candy seller" or "candy counter." In some other context it might refer to a "candy store" or a "candy department." (Notice that the English asks where you can BUY something, but the Chinese equivalent asks where something is SOLD.)

Xiǎomàibù, "variety shop," is a small shop inside a building. In a museum the shop would sell cigarettes, sweet buns, and soda. In a hotel it would sell a wide variety of goods, including souvenirs, soap, thermoses, socks, fruit, bread, and wine.

12.	wàibianr (wàibian)	outside
13.	yǐhòu	after
14.	yòubianr (yòubian)	right side
15.	zuǒbianr (zuǒbian)	left side
16	xiǎoxué	elementary school
17.	zhōngxué	middle school (the equivalent of junior and senior high school)

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

Yǐhòu, "after," is used in the same position in a sentence as yǐqián, "before."

Tā mǎile dōngxi yǐhòu, zài qù kàn péngyou.	After he has bought some things, he will go to see a friend.

In the Money Module, Unit 4, you learned that completion le is placed directly after the verb if the amount of the sentence object is specified, but is placed at the end of the sentence if the amount is not stated.

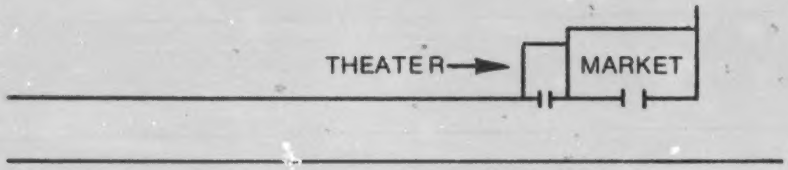
AMOUNT UNSPECIFIED: Wǒ mǎi fànwǎn le. I bought rice bowls.

AMOUNT SPECIFIED: Wǒ mǎile shíge fànwǎn. I bought ten rice bowls.

In the example for yǐhòu, le is used in another setting, the dependent clause of a sentence. In this case, the marker le is placed directly after the verb, whether or not the amount of the object is stated.

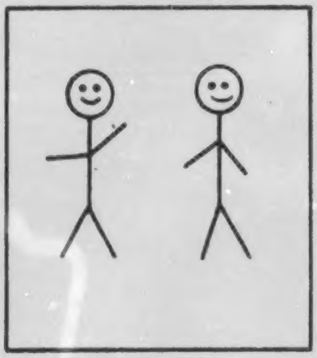
Mǎile shū yǐhòu, tā jiù zǒu le.	After he bought the books, he left.
Mǎile wǔběn shū yǐhòu, tā jiù zǒu le.	After he bought five books, he left.

Zuǒbianr, yòubianr: In English, we generally assign left and right from the point of view of the observer: "As you look at the two buildings, the movie theater will be on the (your) left, and the market will be on the (your) right." It is common for Chinese to assign left and right from the point of view of the object itself. For instance, the theater shown below might be described in Chinese as being on the right side of the market.



From the point of view of the market, with the entrance as its "front side," the theater is indeed located on the market's right.

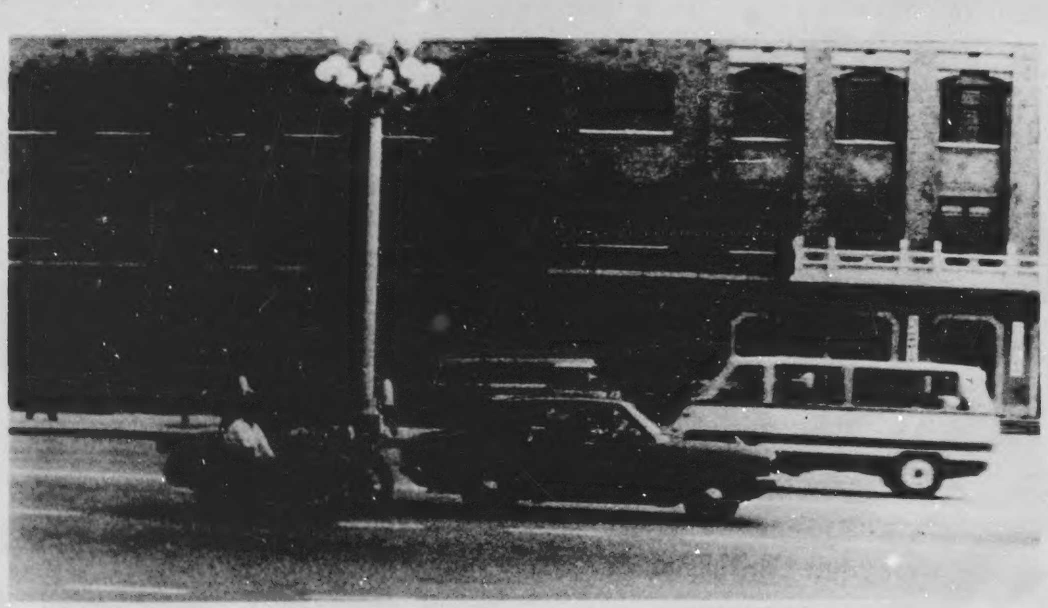
The same difference shows up in describing the relative locations of people or places in a photograph. In English, most people would say that Comrade Lǐ is to the left of Comrade Mǎ in the picture below. In Chinese, many people would say Lǐ Tóngzhì zài Mǎ Tóngzhìde yòubianr.



Lǐ Tóngzhì Mǎ Tóngzhì

Of course, the way of assigning left and right varies with speakers of both languages and with different situations.

Xiǎoxué, zhōngxué; "primary school," "high school" (literally, "small study," "middle study"): In the PRC and in Taiwan, primary school (xiǎoxué) includes grades one through six. Junior high school has grades one through three, and senior high school also has grades one through three.



Běijīng street scene

VOCABULARY BOOSTER

Things in Nature

air	kōngqì
animal	dòngwu
beach	hǎitān
bird	niǎo (yìzhī, yíge)
bushes	guànmucōng (yíkuài, yípiàn, "a stretch of")
cave	shāndòng
cloud	yún (yìduǒ, yípiàn, yìcéng)
desert	shāmò (yípiàn, "a stretch of")
dew	lùshuǐ (yìdī, "a drop of")
earth [the planet]	dìqiú
earthquake	dìzhèn (yícì)
fire	huǒ
flower	huā (yìduǒ, yìzhī)
fog	wù
forest	shùlínzi (yíge, yípiàn, "a stretch of")
grass	cǎo (yìgēn)
ground, on the	dìshang
hail	báozi (yílì báozi, "a hailstone"; yìchǎng, yízhèn báozi, "a hailstorm")
hill	xiǎo shān (yízuò, yíge)
hills	qiūlíng (yípiàn, "a stretch of")
hurricane	jùfēng (yícì, yìchǎng)
ice	bīng
insect	chóngzi
insects [scientific term]	kūnchóng
island	dǎo, hǎidǎo [in the sea]
lake	hú
lightning	shǎndiàn
meadow	cǎodì (yíkuài, yípiàn)
moon	yuèliang, yuèqiú [astronomical term]
mountain	shān (yízuò)
mud	ní, níbā
ocean	hǎi
path	xiǎo lù (yìtiáo)
pebble	shítou zǐr (yílì, yíge)

planet	xíngxīng (yìkē)
plant	zhíwù
rain	yŭ (yìchăng)
rainbow	căihóng (yídào)
river	hé (yìtiáo)
rock	yánshí
sea	hăi
sky	tiān, tiānkōng
snow	xuĕ (yìchăng; yìduī, "a pile of")
star	xīngxing (yìkē), héngxīng (yìkē) [astronomical term]
stone	shítou (yíkuài)
storm	bàofēngyŭ (yìchăng, yícì)
stream	xiăo hé, xiăo xī (yìtiáo)
sun	tàiyang
sunrise	rìchū (yícì)
sunset	rìluò (yícì)
sunshine	yángguāng
thunder	léi
tree	shù (yìkē)
typhoon	táifēng (yícì, yìchăng)
valley	shāngŭ
volcano	huŏshān (yízuò)
waterfall	pùbù
wind	fēng
woods	shùlínzi (yíge, yípiàn, "a stretch of")

DRILLS

A. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn zài zhèr fùjìn. (The Dōngdān Theater is in this area.)	You: Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn shì bu shi zài zhèr fùjìn? (Is the Dōngdān Theater in this area?)
2.	Wáng Tóngzhì jiā zài zhèr fùjìn.	Wáng Tóngzhì jiā shì bu shi zài zhèr fùjìn?
3.	Nǐ péngyou jiā zài nèr fùjìn.	Nǐ péngyou jiā shì bu shi zài nèr fùjìn?
4.	Běijīng Fàndiàn zài zhèr fùjìn.	Běijīng Fàndiàn shì bu shi zài zhèr fùjìn?
5.	Nèige shāngdiàn zài zhèr fùjìn.	Nèige shāngdiàn shì bu shi zài zhèr fùjìn?
6.	Nèige xuéxiào zài zhèr fùjìn.	Nèige xuéxiào shì bu shi zài zhèr fùjìn?
7.	Nèige fànguǎnr zài zhèr fùjìn.	Nèige fànguǎnr shì bu shi zài zhèr fùjìn?

B. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Diànyǐngyuàn fùjìn yǒu yínháng ma? (Is there a bank in the vicinity of the movie theater?)	You: Diànyǐngyuàn fùjìn yǒu meiyou yínháng? (Is there a bank in the vicinity of the movie theater?)
2.	Càishichǎng fùjìn yǒu yínháng ma?	Càishichǎng fùjìn yǒu meiyou yínháng?
3.	Tā jiā fùjìn yǒu gōngyuán ma?	Tā jiā fùjìn yǒu meiyou gōngyuán?
4.	Nèige xuéxiào fùjìn yǒu fànguǎnr ma?	Nèige xuéxiào fùjìn yǒu meiyou fànguǎnr?
5.	Nèige fànguǎnr fùjìn yǒu shāngdiàn ma?	Nèige fànguǎnr fùjìn yǒu meiyou shāngdiàn?

6.	Nèige shāngdiàn fùjìn yǒu yínháng ma?	Nèige shāngdiàn fùjìn yǒu meiyou yínháng?
7.	Dōngdān Càishichǎng fùjìn yǒu shāngdiàn ma?	Dōngdān Càishichǎng fùjìn yǒu meiyou shāngdiàn?

C. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Diànyǐngyuàn fùjìn yǒu meiyou yínháng? (Is there a bank in the vicinity of the movie theater?)	You: Yínháng shì bu shi zài diànyǐngyuàn fùjìn? (Is the bank in the vicinity of the movie theater?)
2.	Dōngdān fùjìn yǒu meiyou càishichǎng?	Càishichǎng shì bu shi zài Dōngdān fùjìn?
3.	Gōngyuán fùjìn yǒu meiyou xuéxiào?	Xuéxiào shì bu shi zài gōngyuán fùjìn?
4.	Nàr fùjìn yǒu meiyou lǐfǎde?	Lǐfǎde shì bu shi zài nàr fùjìn?
5.	Běijīng Fàndiàn fùjìn yǒu meiyou diànyǐngyuàn?	Diànyǐngyuàn shì bu shi zài Běijīng Fàndiàn fùjìn?
6.	Nèige shāngdiàn fùjìn yǒu meiyou yínháng?	Yínháng shì bu shi zài nèige shāngdiàn fùjìn?
7.	Nǐ jiā fùjìn yǒu meiyou xuéxiào?	Xuéxiào shì bu shi zài nǐ jiā fùjìn?

D. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn shì bu shi zài zhèr fùjìn? (cue) no (Is the Dōngdān Theater in this area?)	You: Bú zài zhèr fùjìn. Zhèr fùjìn méiyou diànyǐngyuàn. (Not around here. There's no movie theater in this area.)
OR	Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn shì bu shi zài zhèr fùjìn? (cue) yes (Is the Dōngdān Theater in this area?)	Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn shì zài zhèr fùjìn. (The Dōngdān Theater is in this area.)

2.	Dōngdān Càishichǎng shì bu shi zài zhèr fùjìn? yes	Dōngdān Càishichǎng shì zài zhèr fùjìn.
3.	Dōngdān Gōngyuán shì bu shi zài zhèr fùjìn? no	Bú zài zhèr fùjìn. Zhèr fùjìn méiyou gōngyuán.
4.	Xiǎomàibù shì bu shi zài zhèr fùjìn? yes	Xiǎomàibù shì zài zhèr fùjìn.
5.	Mài tángde shì bu shi zài zhèr fùjìn? no	Bú zài zhèr fùjìn. Zhèr fùjìn méiyou mài tángde.
6.	Běijīng Fàndiàn shì bu shi zài zhèr fùjìn? yes	Běijīng Fàndiàn shì zài zhèr fùjìn.

E. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Nǐ zhīdao yínháng shénme shíhou kāi mén ma? (Do you know at what time the bank opens?)	You: Nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao yínháng shénme shíhou kāi mén? (Do you know at what time the bank opens?)
2.	Nǐ zhīdao yínháng zài nǎli ma?	Nǐ zhīdao bu zhidao yínháng zài nǎli?
3.	Tā zhīdao nèige fànguǎnzi shì shéide ma?	Tā zhīdao bu zhidao nèige fànguǎnzi shì shéide?
4.	Lǐ Tóngzhì zhīdao nǐ yǒu duōshao qián ma?	Lǐ Tóngzhì zhīdao bu zhidao nǐ yǒu duōshao qián?
5.	Fāng Xiānsheng zhīdao nǐ shénme shíhou lái ma?	Fāng Xiānsheng zhīdao bu zhidao nǐ shénme shíhou lái?
6.	Nǐ àiren zhīdao mài tángde xìng shénme ma?	Nǐ àiren zhīdao bu zhidao mài tángde xìng shénme?
7.	Tā àiren zhīdao Sūn Tóngzhì shénme shíhou gōngzuò ma?	Tā àiren zhīdao bu zhidao Sūn Tóngzhì shénme shíhou gōngzuò?

F. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù. (cue) zěnme (Go from here to there.)	You: Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù zěnme zǒu? (How do you go from here to there?)
OR	Cóng Dōngdān Gōngyuán dào diànyǐngyuàn qù. (cue) dōng (Go from Dōngdān Park to the movie theater.)	Cóng Dōngdān Gōngyuán dào diànyǐngyuàn qù, wàng dōng zǒu, duì bu duì? (To go from Dōngdān Park to the movie theater, I go to the east. Right?)
2.	Cóng Dōngdān Gōngyuán dào càishichǎng qù. qián	Cóng Dōngdān Gōngyuán dào càishichǎng qù, wàng qián zǒu, duì bu duì?
3.	Cóng Chángān Jiē dào Sānlǐtún qù. zěnme	Cóng Chángān Jiē dào Sānlǐtún qù zěnme zǒu?
4.	Cóng Qiánmén Dàjiē dào Rìtán Lù qù. xī	Cóng Qiánmén Dàjiē dào Rìtán Lù qù, wàng xī zǒu, duì bu duì?
5.	Cóng Guānghuá Lù dào Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē qù. běi	Cóng Guānghuá Lù dào Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē qù, wàng běi zǒu, duì bu duì?
6.	Cóng Chángān Jiē dào Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē qù. yòu	Cóng Chángān Jiē dào Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē qù, wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì?

G. Substitution Drill

1.	Speaker: Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng dōng zǒu, duì bu duì? (cue) xī (After I come out of that hotel, I go to the east. Right?)	You: Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng xī zǒu, duì bu duì? (After I come out of that hotel, I go to the west. Right?)
2.	Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng xī zǒu, duì bu duì? nán	Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng nán zǒu, duì bu duì?
3.	Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng nán zǒu, duì bu duì? běi	Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng běi zǒu, duì bu duì?
4.	Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng běi zǒu, duì bu duì? zuǒ	Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?

5.	Wŏ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng zuŏ zŏu, duì bu dui? nèibian	Wŏ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng nèibian zŏu, duì bu dui?
6.	Wŏ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng nèibian zŏu, duì bu dui? yòu	Wŏ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng yòu zŏu, duì bu dui?
7.	Wŏ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng yòu zŏu, duì bu dui? dōng	Wŏ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng dōng zŏu, duì bu dui?

H. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Zuŏbianr shi diànyĭngyuàn. (cue) Dōngdān Càishichăng (To the left is the movie theater.)	You: Dōngdān Càishichăngde zuŏbianr shi diànyĭngyuàn. (To the left of the Dōngdān Market is the movie theater.)
2.	Yòubianr yŏu shāngdiàn. zhèige fàndiàn	Zhèige fàndiànde yòubianr yŏu shāngdiàn.
3.	Zuŏbianr shi mài tàngde. xiăomàibù	Xiăomàibùde zuŏbianr shi mài tángde.
4.	Wàibianr yŏu màibàode. gōngyuán	Gōngyuánde wàibianr yŏu màibàode.
5.	Zuŏbianr yŏu fàndiàn. càishichăng	Càishichăngde zuŏbianr yŏu fàndiàn.
6.	Yòubianr yŏu mài tángde. diànyĭngyuàn	Diànyĭngyuànde yòubianr yŏu mài tángde.
7.	Wàibianr shi shāngdiàn. fàndiàn	Fàndiànde wàibianr shì shāngdiàn.

I. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Càishichǎngde xībianr yǒu diànyǐngyuàn. (To the west of the market is a movie theater.)	You: Nèige diànyǐngyuàn jiù zài càishichǎngde xībianr. (That movie theater is to the west of the market.)
2.	Diànyǐngyuànde wàibianr yǒu mài bàode.	Nèige mài bàode jiù zài diànyǐngyuànde wàibianr.
3.	Gōngyuánde lǐbianr yǒu mài qìshuǐde.	Nèige mài qìshuǐde jiù zài gōngyuánde lǐbianr.
4.	Xuéxiàode dōngbianr yǒu yínháng.	Nèige yínháng jiù zài xuéxiàode dōngbianr.
5.	Fànguǎnr nánbianr yǒu shāngdiàn.	Nèige shāngdiàn jiù zài fànguǎnrde nánbianr.
6.	Yínhángde yòubianr yǒu fànguǎnr.	Nèige fànguǎnr jiù zài yínhángde yòubianr.
7.	Fàndiànde běibianr yǒu diànyǐngyuàn.	Nèige diànyǐngyuàn jiù zài fàndiànde běibianr.

J. Combination Drill

1.	Speaker: Tā qù kàn diànyǐng. Tā qù kàn yige péngyou. (He goes to see a movie. He goes to visit a friend.	You: Qù kàn diànyǐng yǐqián, tā xiān qù kàn yige péngyou. (Before he goes to see a movie, he first goes to visit a friend.)
2.	Tā qù xué Zhōngguo huà. Tā qù mǎi yìběn shū.	Qù xué Zhōngguo huà yǐqián, tā xiān qù mǎi yìběn shū.
3.	Tā qù mǎi shū. Tā qù huàn yìdiǎnr qián.	Qù mǎi shū yǐqián, tā xiān qù huàn yìdiǎnr qián.
4.	Tā qù kàn diànyǐng. Tā qù mǎi táng.	Qù kàn diànyǐng yǐqián, tā xiān qù mǎi táng.
5.	Tā qù gōngzuò. Tā qù kàn Zhào Tàitai.	Qù gōngzuò yǐqián, tā xiān qù kàn Zhào Tàitai.

162

6.	Tā qù Měiguo. Tā qù niàn Yīngwén.	Qù Měiguo yǐqián, tā xiān qù niàn Yīngwén.
7.	Tā qù kàn Lín Xiānsheng. Tā qù mǎi yìdiǎnr diǎnxīn.	Qù kàn Lín Xiānsheng yǐqián, tā xiān qù mǎi yìdiǎnr diǎnxīn.

K. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Qù kàn diànyǐng yǐqián, tā xiān qù kàn péngyou. (Before seeing the movie, he first goes to visit a friend.)	You: Tā kàn péngyou yǐhòu, qù kàn diànyǐng. (After he visits a friend, he goes to see a movie.)
2.	Qù xué Zhōngguo huà yǐqián, tā xiān qù mǎi shū.	Tā mǎi shū yǐhòu, qù xué Zhōngguo huà.
3.	Qù mǎi shū yǐqián, tā xiān qù huàn qián.	Tā huàn qián yǐhòu, qù mǎi shū.
4.	Qù kàn diànyǐng yǐqián, tā xiān qù mǎi táng.	Tā mǎi táng yǐhòu, qù kàn diànyǐng.
5.	Qù gōngzuò yǐqián, tā xiān qù kàn Zhào Tàitai.	Tā kàn Zhào Tàitai yǐhòu, qù gōngzuò.
6.	Qù niàn lìshǐ yǐqián, tā xiān qù niàn Yīngwén.	Tā niàn Yīngwén yǐhòu, qù niàn lìshǐ.
7.	Qù kàn Lǐ Xiānsheng yǐqián, tā xiān qù mǎi diǎnxīn.	Tā mǎi diǎnxīn yǐhòu, qù kàn Lǐ Xiānsheng.

L. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Zhèr yǒu meiyou mài tángde? (cue) lǐbianr (Is there a candy store here?)	You: Yǒu, mài tángde zài lǐbianr. (Yes, there's a candy store inside.)
2.	Xiǎomàibù nàr yǒu meiyou mài qìshuǐde? zuǒbianr	Yǒu, mài qìshuǐde zài zuǒbianr.
3.	Xuéxiào nàr yǒu meiyou mài Yīngwén zìdiǎnde? dōngbianr	Yǒu, mài Yīngwén zìdiǎnde zài dōngbianr.
4.	Nàr yǒu meiyou mài júzide? yòubianr	Yǒu, mài júzide zài yòubianr.
5.	Gōngyuán fùjìn yǒu meiyou mài zázhìde? nánbianr	Yǒu, mài zázhìde zài nánbianr.
6.	Fàndiàn fùjìn yǒu meiyou mài dìtúde? xībianr	Yǒu, mài dìtúde zài xībianr.
7.	Càishichǎngli yǒu meiyou mài píjiǔde? nèibianr	Yǒu, mài píjiǔde zài nèibianr.

UNIT 3

REFERENCE LIST

(in Běijīng)

1.	B:	Nǐ chūqu a!	Oh, you're going out!
	A:	Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi jiběn shū.	I thought I would go out to buy a few books.
2.	A:	Láojià, nǎr yǒu mài shūde?	Excuse me, where is there a place to buy books?
	C:	Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē yǒu yige Xīnhuá Shūdiàn, hěn dà.	There is a New China Bookstore on Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard that is very large.
3.	A:	Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?	Is the New China Bookstore far from here?
	C:	Bù yuǎn, hěn jìn.	It's not far; it's very close.
4.	A:	Zěnme qù? Zǒuzhe qù kéyi ma?	How do I go? Is it possible to get there by walking?
	C:	Zǒuzhe qù kéyi.	It's possible to get there by walking.
5.	A:	Zěnme zǒu?	How do I go?
	C:	Cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo běi guǎi, jiù shi Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē.	You go out the entrance, turn to the north, and that's Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard.
6.	*A:	Wǒ cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo běi guǎi, duì bu dui?	I go out the entrance and turn to the north. Is that correct?
	C:	Duì le.	That's correct.
7.	A:	Zǒu duó yuǎn?	How far do I go?
	C:	Zǒu bù yuǎn, lùdōngde dìyīge dàlóu jiù shi Xīnhuá Shūdiàn.	Go a short distance, and the first building on the east side of the street is the New China Bookstore.
8.	*A:	Láojià, nèige dàlóu shi Xīnhuá Shūdiàn ma?	Excuse me, is that building the New China Bookstore?
	D:	Shì.	Yes.

---

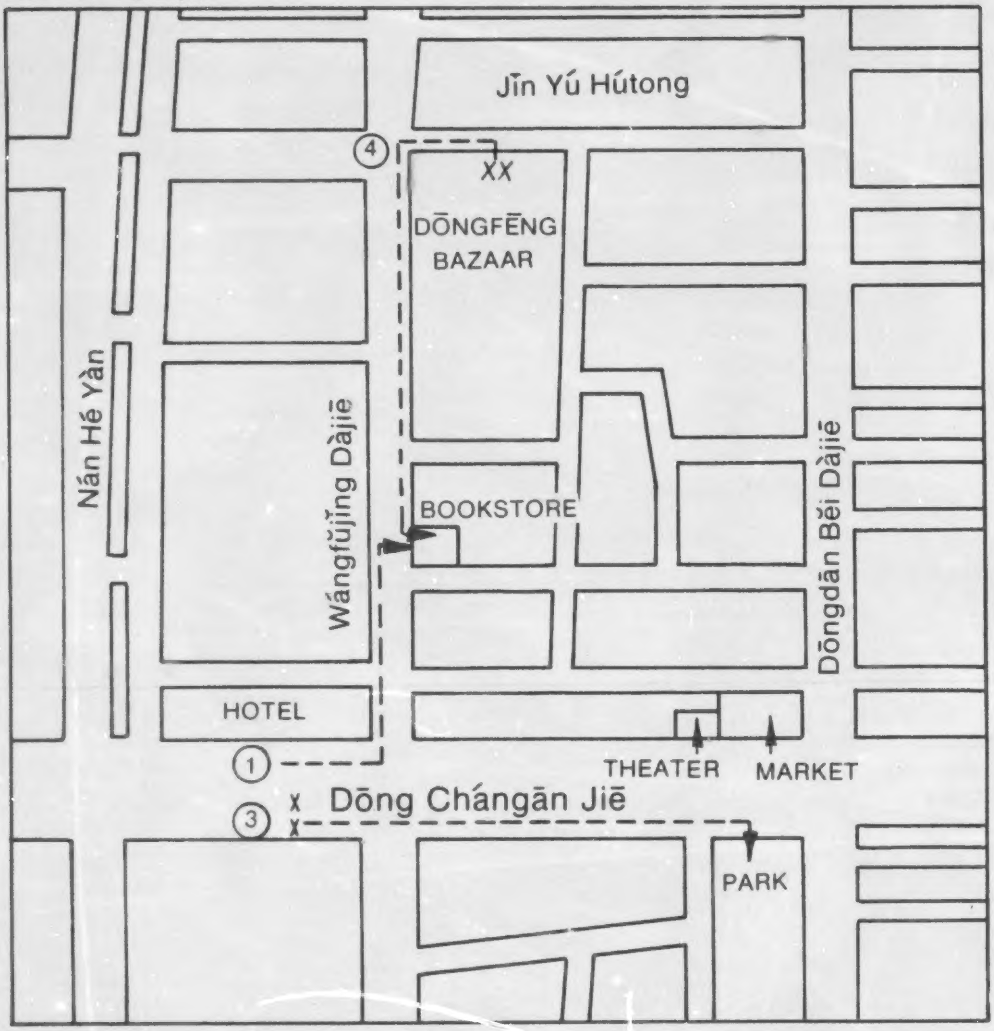
*This exchange occurs on the P-1 tape only.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

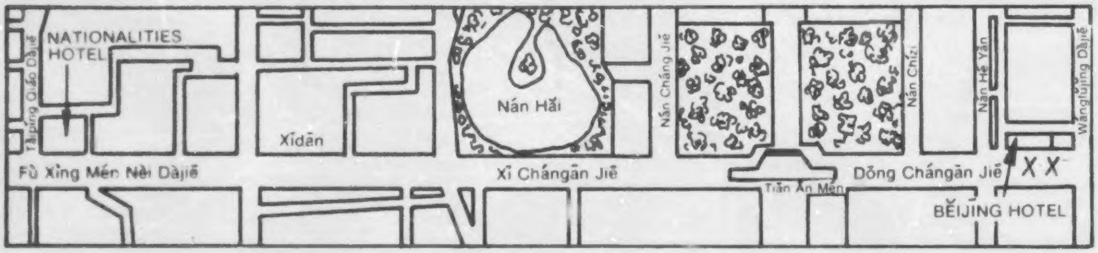
9.	zhuǎn	to turn
10.	chūlai	to come out
11.	lùxī	the west side of the street
12.	lùběi	the north side of the street
13.	lùnán	the south side of the street
14.	bǎihuò gōngsī	department store
15.	Bǎihuò Dàlóu	(name of a department store in Běijīng)
16.	shàngbianr (shàngbian)	above; the top, the upper part
17.	xiàbianr (xiàbian)	below, under; the bottom, the lower part
18.	dǐxia	underneath; the underneath
19.	zhōngjiānr (zhōngjiànr) (zhōngjiān)	the middle, the space in between
20.	pángbiānr (pángbiān)	beside, next to, alongside of; the side

MAPS FOR C-1 TAPE

DISPLAYS I, III, IV


Jīn Yú Hútong
④
XX
DŌNGFĒNG
BAZAAR
Nán Hé Yàn
Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē
BOOKSTORE
Dōngdān Běi Dàjiē
HOTEL
①
THEATER
MARKET
X
Dōng Chángān Jiē
③
X
PARK

DISPLAY II

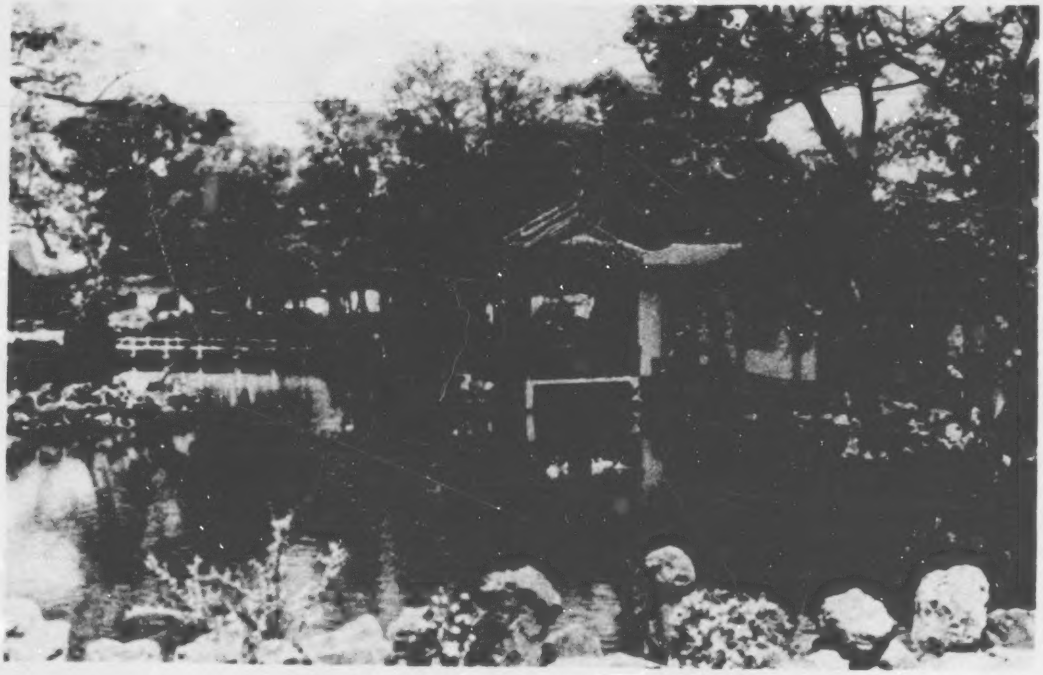

NATIONALITIES
HOTEL
Tàipíng Qiáo Dàjiē
Xīdān
Nán Hǎi
Nán Cháng Jiē
Nán Chízi
Nán Hé Yàn
Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē
Fù Xīng Mén Nèi Dàjiē
Xī Chángān Jiē
Tiān Ān Mén
Dōng Chángān Jiē
X X
BĚIJING HOTEL

VOCABULARY

Bǎihuǒ Dàlóu	(name of a department store in Běijīng)
bǎihuǒ gōngsī	department store
cháo	to, towards
chūlai	to come out
chūqu	to go out
dàjiē	boulevard
dàlóu	building
dàmén(r)	entrance
dǐxia	underneath; the underneath
duó yuǎn	how far
guǎi	to turn
ji-	a few
jige	several
jìn	to be close, to be near
láojià	excuse me
lí	from, apart from
lùběi	the north side of the street
lùdōng	the east side of the street
lùnán	the south side of the street
lùxī	the west side of the street
pángbiānr (pángbiān)	beside, next to, alongside of; the side
shàngbianr (shàngbian)	above, the top, the upper part
shūdiàn	bookstore
xiàbianr (xiàbian)	below, under; the bottom, the lower part
Xīnhuá Shūdiàn	New China Bookstore (Běijīng)
yíge	a, an
yuǎn	to be far
zhōngjiānr (zhōngjiànr) (zhōngjiān)	the middle, the space in between
zhuǎn	to turn
zǒuzhe	walking

(introduced on C-2 tape)

dài biǎo	to wear a watch
Hàn-Rì zìdiǎn	Chinese-Japanese dictionary
niàn	to be pronounced, to be read as
Rì-Hàn zìdiǎn	Japanese-Chinese dictionary
yíjiàn yīshang	a piece of clothing
zǎo	to be early
zǒu dào	to walk to



Wén Wǔ Temple, near Sun-Moon Lake in Taiwan

REFERENCE NOTES

1.	B: Nǐ chūqu a!	Oh, you're going out!
	A: Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi jiběn shū.	I thought I would go out to buy a few books.

Notes on No. 1

Chūqu, "to go out (away from the speaker)": The verb chū means "to go/come out," "to exit," in the sense of leaving an area. Chū must be followed either by the name of the place being left (as in chūle zhèige fàndiàn) or by the verb lái or qù used as a DIRECTIONAL ENDING. When lái or qù follows, the verb indicates not only that the person exits but also that the person exits towards or away from the speaker. Chūqu corresponds to the English "going out," and chūlai to "coming out."

Tā zǎoshang jiù chūqu le.	He went out this morning.
Tā zài nèige shāngdiànli mǎi cài yǐjīng sānshifēn zhōng le! Hái méi chūlai!	He has been in that shop buying groceries for thirty minutes already, and he hasn't come out yet!

When the verbs lái and qù are used as directional endings, they are unstressed and toneless.

Nǐ chūqu a! Sometimes this expression might be used as a greeting. Instead of saying "hello" when greeting a friend or acquaintance, the Chinese state the obvious. For example, if you (Ān Dàwèi) drop in unexpectedly on a Chinese friend, probably the first thing he will say is O! Ān Dàwèi! Nǐ lái le! Qǐng jìn, "Oh! Ān Dàwèi! You have come! Please come in." Or if you run an errand and then return, you will probably be greeted with Huílai le, "You're back." A friend of yours who runs into you downtown may say Nǐ yě dào zhèr lái le, "You have come here too." In Chinese these remarks are a common form of greeting.

Jiběn: The bound word jǐ- means "a few." It is unstressed and often toneless. When stressed, jǐ- is the question word "how many."

Tā mǎile jǐběn (OR jiběn) shū.	He bought a few books.
Tā mǎile jǐběn shū?	How many books did he buy?

Intonation and context will often help you decide which jǐ- is being used.

Chūqu mǎi jiběn shū: The phrase following the verb chūqu indicates the purpose of going cut. Purpose expressions often follow the verbs lái, qù, and their compounds.

2.	A:	Láojià, nǎr yǒu mài shūde?	Excuse me, where is there a place to buy books?
	C:	Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē yǒu yige Xīnhuá Shūdiàn, hěn dà.	There is a New China Bookstore on Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard that is very large.

Notes on No. 2

Láojià is a Běijīng expression used when asking a person to do something. (In exchange 2, a person is being asked to give directions.) Speakers of Chinese from other areas of China would probably use qǐngwèn.

Hěn dà, "(It is) very big": Notice that in the English translation two Chinese sentences have been combined. Literally, the Chinese means "On Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard there is a New China Bookstore. It is very large." Chinese punctuation rules allow two sentences to be separated by a comma instead of a period if the relationship between the sentences is considered very close.

Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē: The Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard area is a major shopping district in Běijīng. Bǎihuò Dàlóu (a state-owned department store), Dōngfēng Shìchǎng (a large enclosed market), bookstores, antique shops, and hotels are found there.

3.	A:	Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?	Is the New China Bookstore far from here?
	C:	Bù yuǎn, hěn jìn.	It's not far; it's very close.

Notes on No. 3

Lí: The prepositional verb lí means "from" in the sense of "to be apart from." Like other prepositional verb phrases, a phrase containing lí precedes the main verb--in this case, the adjectival verb yuǎn, "to be far."

Xīnhuá Shūdiàn	lí	zhèr	yuǎn ma?
(New China Bookstore	from	here	far?)

"Is the New China Bookstore far from here?"

Unlike other prepositional verbs, lí cannot be made negative. You cannot say that one point is "not apart" from another. You say that two points are "not close to each other" or "not far from each other."

Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr bú jìn.

Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr bù yuǎn.

Cóng and lí are both translated as "from." Cóng is used with the point of origin, and lí is used with the distance between two points.

4.	A:	Zěnme qù? Zǒuzhe qù kéyi ma?	How do I go? Is it possible to get there by walking?
	C:	Zǒuzhe qù kéyi.	It's possible to get there by walking.

Notes on No. 4

Zěnme qù? looks very much like zěnme zǒu, which asks about what route you should take. Zěnme qù? asks about your means of transportation.

Zǒuzhe, "walking": When the marker -zhe is added to an action verb, the verb form corresponds to the English -ing. The -zhe puts the focus on action continuing for some time. Because of this, -zhe is called a marker of DURATION.

Tā xuézhe xuézhe jiù bù xiǎng xuéle.	He was studying and studying it, and then he didn't want to study it anymore.

In the sentence *Zŏuzhe qù kéyi*, the marker -*zhe* is attached to one verb (*zŏu*) to modify another verb (*qù*). This indicates that the action of the verb to which -*zhe* is added occurs simultaneously with the action of the verb modified. The action of "walking" modifies the action of "going there." The phrase can be understood as "walkingly go." *

Here are some other examples:

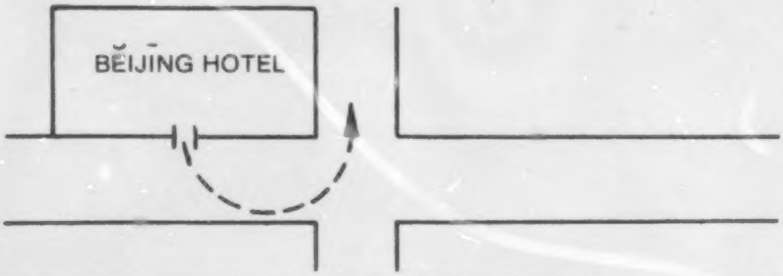
Tā mĕitiān chīzhe fàn kàn diànshì.	Every day he watches television while eating.
Nĭ shēngzhe bìng hái zuò shì!	You work even while you're sick!

5.	A:	Zĕnme zŏu?	How do I go?
	C:	Cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo bĕi guăi, jiù shi Wángfŭjĭng Dàjiē.	You go out (from) the entrance, turn to the north, and that's Wángfŭjĭng Boulevard.

Notes on No. 5

Cháo: The prepositional verb *cháo*, literally meaning "facing towards," is used in Bĕijīng.

Guăi, "to turn": The verb *guăi* usually refers to a 90-degree turn, but you can see below that it is used in exchange 5 to refer to a 180-degree turn. In English we would break up the directions into three steps, saying "You go out the entrance, turn left, and turn left again at the corner." In Chinese, if the building you are leaving is on a corner, going along one side and then turning the corner may be thought of as a single step.



---

*Because the two actions amount to one action for all practical purposes, this may be one of the more difficult examples for the marker -*zhe*. Learn this sentence as a whole for now.

Jiù shi literally means "(that) is precisely" or "right there is." Here you see jiù used to mean "right," "just," "precisely": "You go out the entrance, turn to the north, and that's Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard right there."

6.	A:	Wǒ cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo běi guǎi, duì bu dui?	I go out (from) the entrance and turn to the north. Is that correct?
	C:	Duì le.	That's correct.
7.	A:	Zǒu duó yuǎn?	How far do I go?
	C:	Zǒu bù yuǎn, lùdōngde dìyīge dàlóu jiù shi Xīnhuá Shūdiàn.	Go a short distance, and the first building on the east side of the street is the New China Bookstore.

Notes on No. 7

Duó yuǎn: The question "how far" is formed like the questions duó dà, "how old," and duó jiǔ, "how long."

Zǒu bù yuǎn: Notice that there are two verbs in this phrase. The first verb indicates the action, and the second verb indicates the extent of the action. (The Transportation Module includes notes about how to modify verbs.)

Lùdōng, "the east side of the street": This word is a short form. The directions -nán, -xī, and -běi may also be used in similar short forms. The long form of lùdōng is lù dōngbianr.

Notice that "on the east side of the street" comes at the end of a phrase in English, while in Chinese lùdōngde begins the phrase.

lùdōngde	dìyīge dàlóu	
	the first building	on the east

8.	A: Láojià, nèige dàlóu shi Xīnhuá Shūdiàn ma? D: Shì.	Excuse me, is that building the New China Bookstore? Yes.
9.	zhuǎn	to turn
10.	chūlai	to come out
11.	lùxī	the west side of the street
12.	lùběi	the north side of the street
13.	lùnán	the south side of the street
14.	bǎihuò gōngsī	department store
15.	Bǎihuò Dàlóu	(name of a department store in Běijīng)
16.	shàngbianr (shàngbian)	above; the top, the upper part
17.	xiàbianr (xiàbian)	below, under; the bottom, the lower part
18.	dǐxia	underneath; the underneath
19.	zhōngjiānr (zhōngjiànr) (zhōngjiān)	the middle, the space in between
20.	pángbiānr (pángbiān)	beside, next to, alongside of; the side

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

Zhuǎn, "to turn," "to make a turn": The verb *guǎi*, "to turn," is usually preceded by directions such as north/south or left/right. *Zhuǎn* is more frequently used to talk about turning to the rear.

xiàng hòu zhuǎn	turn around (literally, "towards the back turn")

Zhuǎn is also the verb to use for "turn" when speaking of going from one street to another.

Cóng Dàlǐ Jiē zhuǎndao Hépíng Dōnglù.	From Dàlǐ street turn onto Hépíng East Road.

(*Guǎi* cannot be used this way.)

Chūlai, "to come out," is made up of the verb *chū*, "to exit," plus the verb *lái* used as a directional ending. This ending tells you that the action is towards the speaker.

Bǎihuò gōngsī, "department store" (literally, "hundred-goods company"): This term is used for large department stores. Smaller stores that sell a variety of merchandise are called *bǎihuòdiàn* or *bǎihuò shāngdiàn*.

Bǎihuò Dàlóu, literally, "Hundred-Goods Building": There is only one store in Běijīng with this name; therefore the phrase is used as a proper name. The general term for a large Western-style department store is bǎihuò gōngsī.

Shàngbianr can mean "the top side/surface," "the top part/area," or "a place which is above/up." When used after another noun, shàngbianr may be translated as "on," "on top of," "above," or "over."

Zhèige zhuōzi shàngbianr yǒu sìběn shū.	There are four books on this table.
Fēijī zài yún shàngbianr.	The plane is above the clouds.

Xiàbianr, "the bottom," "the lower part"; "under," "below"

Wǒ zài tiānqiáo xiàbianr děng ni.	I'll wait for you under the overpass.

Dǐxia, "the underneath"; "underneath"

Shū zài zhuōzi dǐxia.	The books are underneath the table.
Zhèige dàlóude dǐxia shi yige diànyǐngyuàn, shángmian yǒu fànguǎn hé shāngdiàn.	The underneath of this building is a movie theater, and above there is a restaurant and a store.

Zhōngjiānr, "the middle," "the space in between"

Wǒde zhuōzi zài wǒ wūzide zhōngjiānr.	My table is in the middle of my room.
Zuǒbianr shi yíge fàndiàn, yòubianr shi yíge càishichǎng, zhōngjiān nèige dàlóu jiù shi wo zhùde dìfang.	On the left there's a hotel; on the right there's a market; and the building in between is where I live.

Pángbiānr, "beside," "next to," "alongside of"; "the side"

Wǒ jiù zhù zai tāmen jiā pángbiānr.	I live right next to their place.
Tā pángbiānr nèige rén jiù shi Wáng Lìguó.	The man beside him is Wáng Lìguó.

DRILLS

A. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Wŏ xiăng măi jibĕn shū. (I would like to buy several books.)	You: Wŏ xiăng chūqu măi jibĕn shū. (I would like to go out and buy several books.)
2.	Wŏ xiăng kàn yíge péngyou.	Wŏ xiăng chūqu kàn yíge péngyou.
3.	Wŏ xiăng măi yífèn bào.	Wŏ xiăng chūqu măi yífèn bào.
4.	Wŏ xiăng măi yìdiăn pánziwăn.	Wŏ xiăng chūqu măi yìdiăn pánziwăn.
5.	Wŏ xiăng kàn yíge Zhōngguo péngyou.	Wŏ xiăng chūqu kàn yíge Zhōngguo péngyou.
6.	Wŏ xiăng măi jikuài féizào.	Wŏ xiăng chūqu măi jikuài féizào.
7.	Wŏ xiăng măi yìbă yŭsăn.	Wŏ xiăng chūqu măi yìbă yŭsăn.

B. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Wŏ xiăng chūqu măi jibĕn shū. (cue) mài shūde (I thought I would go out to buy a few books.)	You: Wŏ xiăng chūqu măi jibĕn shū. Qĭngwèn, năr yŏu mài shūde? (I thought I would go out to buy a few books. May I ask, where is there a place to buy books?)
2.	Wŏ xiăng chūqu kàn yíge diànyĭng. hăo diànyĭng	Wŏ xiăng chūqu kàn yíge diànyĭng. Qĭngwèn, năr yŏu hăo diànyĭng?
3.	Wŏ xiăng chūqu măi diănr júzi. càishichăng	Wŏ xiăng chūqu măi diănr júzi. Qĭngwèn, năr yŏu càishichăng?
4.	Wŏ xiăng chūqu măi diănr táng. mài tángde	Wŏ xiăng chūqu măi diănr táng. Qĭngwèn, năr yŏu mài tángde?
5.	Wŏ xiăng chūqu huàn diănr Mĕijīn. yínháng	Wŏ xiăng chūqu huàn diănr Mĕijīn. Qĭngwèn, năr yŏu yínháng?
6.	Wŏ xiăng chūqu măi jige huāpíng. mài huāpíngde	Wŏ xiăng chūqu măi jige huāpíng. Qĭngwèn, năr yŏu mài huāpíngde?
7.	Wŏ xiăng chūqu măi diănr féizào. xiăomàibù	Wŏ xiăng chūqu măi diănr féizào. Qĭngwèn, năr yŏu xiăomàibù?

C. Transformation Drill

1.	**Speaker**: Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn? (Is the New China Bookstore far from here?)	**You**: Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma? (Is the New China Bookstore far from here?)
2.	Dōngdān Gōngyuán lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn?	Dōngdān Gōngyuán lí zhèr yuǎn ma?
3.	Càishichǎng lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn?	Càishichǎng lí zhèr yuǎn ma?
4.	Diànyǐngyuàn lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn?	Diànyǐngyuàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?
5.	Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn?	Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē lí zhèr yuǎn ma?
6.	Běijīng Fàndiàn lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn?	Běijīng Fàndiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?
7.	Xuéxiào lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn?	Xuéxiào lí zhèr yuǎn ma?

D. Expansion Drill

1.	**Speaker**: Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma? (Is the New China Bookstore far from here?)	**You**: Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma? Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnme zǒu? (Is the New China Bookstore far from here? How do you get there from here?)
2.	Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē lí zhèr yuǎn ma?	Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē lí zhèr yuǎn ma? Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnme zǒu?
3.	Dōngdān Gōngyuán lí zhèr yuǎn ma?	Dōngdān Gōngyuán lí zhèr yuǎn ma? Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnme zǒu?
4.	Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?	Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma? Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnme zǒu?
5.	Dōngdān Càishichǎng lí zhèr yuǎn ma?	Dōngdān Càishichǎng lí zhèr yuǎn ma? Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnme zǒu?

6. Bĕijīng Fàndiàn lí zhèr yuăn ma?	Bĕijīng Fàndiàn lí zhèr yuăn ma? Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zĕnme zŏu?
7. Xuéxiào lí zhèr yuăn ma?	Xuéxiào lí zhèr yuăn ma? Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zĕnme zŏu?

E. Response Drill

1. Speaker: Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr yuăn ma? (Is the New China Bookstore far from here?)	You: Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr bù yuăn, hĕn jìn. (The New China Bookstore isn't far from here. It's quite close.)
OR Yóuzhèngjú lí zhèr jìn ma? (Is the post office nearby [close to here]?)	Yóuzhèngjú lí zhèr bú jìn, hĕn yuăn. (The post office isn't nearby. It's quite faraway.)
2. Dōngdān Càishichăng lí nàr yuăn ma?	Dōngdān Càishichăng lí nàr bù yuăn, hĕn jìn.
3. Dōngdān Diànyĭngyuàn lí zhèr jìn ma?	Dōngdān Diànyĭngyuàn lí zhèr bú jìn, hĕn yuăn.
4. Dōngdān Gōngyuán lí nàr yuăn ma?	Dōngdān Gōngyuán lí nàr bù yuăn, hĕn jìn.
5. Wàngfŭjĭng Dàjiē lí zhèr jìn ma?	Wángfŭjĭng Dàjiē lí zhèr bú jìn, hĕn yuăn.
6. Xiăomàibù lí zhèr yuăn ma?	Xiăomàibù lí zhèr bù yuăn, hĕn jìn.

F. Response Drill

1.	**Speaker**: Nèige gōngyuán lí zhèr yuǎn ma? (Is that park far from here?)	**You**: Nèige gōngyuán lí zhèr bù yuǎn, wǒmen kéyi zǒuzhe qù. (That park isn't far from here. We can walk.)
OR	Nèige yóuzhèngjú lí zhèr jìn ma? (Is that post office nearby?)	Nèige yóuzhèngjú lí zhèr hěn jìn, wǒmen kéyi zǒuzhe qù. (That post office is very close to here. We can walk.)
2.	Nèige xuéxiào lí zhèr yuǎn ma?	Nèige xuéxiào lí zhèr bù yuǎn, wǒmen kéyi zǒuzhe qù.
3.	Nèige càishichǎng lí zhèr jìn ma?	Nèige càishichǎng lí zhèr hěn jìn, wǒmen kéyi zǒuzhe qù.
4.	Nèige dìfang lí zhèr yuǎn ma?	Nèige dìfang lí zhèr bù yuǎn, wǒmen kéyi zǒuzhe qù.
5.	Nèige shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?	Nèige shūdiàn lí zhèr bù yuǎn, wǒmen kéyi zǒuzhe qù.
6.	Nèige shāngdiàn lí zhèr jìn ma?	Nèige shāngdiàn lí zhèr hěn jìn, wǒmen kéyi zǒuzhe qù.

G. Response Drill

1.	**Speaker**: Nǐ cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo běi guǎi, jiù shì. (You go out the entrance, turn to the north, and that's it.)	**You**: Wǒ cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo běi guǎi, duì bu dui? (I go out the entrance and turn to the north. Is that correct?)
OR	Wǒ cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo běi guǎi, duì bu dui? (I go out the entrance and turn to the north. Is that correct?)	Duì le. Nǐ cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo běi guǎi, jiù shì. (That's correct. You go out the entrance, turn to the north, and that's it.)
2.	Nǐ cóng Xīnhuá Shūdiàn chūqu, cháo dōng guǎi, jiù shì.	Wǒ cóng Xīnhuá Shūdiàn chūqu, cháo dōng guǎi, duì bu dui?

3.	Wǒ cóng diànyǐngyuàn chūqu, cháo nán guǎi, duì bu dui?	Duì le. Nǐ cóng diànyǐngyuàn chūqu, cháo nán guǎi, jiù shì.
4.	Nǐ cóng càishichǎng chūqu, cháo xī guǎi, jiù shì.	Wǒ cóng càishichǎng chūqu, cháo xī guǎi, duì bu dui?
5.	Wǒ cóng gōngyuán chūqu, cháo zuǒ guǎi, duì bu dui?	Duì le. Nǐ cóng gōngyuán chūqu, cháo zuǒ guǎi, jiù shì.
6.	Nǐ cóng xiǎomàibù chūqu, cháo yòu guǎi, jiù shì.	Wǒ cóng xiǎomàibù chūqu, cháo yòu guǎi, duì bu dui?

H. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Nǐ xiànzài chūqu mǎi bào ma? (cue) běi (Are you going out now to buy a newspaper?)	You: Duì le, wǒ cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo běi guǎi, jiù yǒu mài bàode, duì bu dui? (That's right. I go out the entrance, turn to the north, and there's a place that sells newspapers. Is that correct?)
2.	Nǐ jīntiān chūqu mǎi shū ma? xī	Duì le, wǒ cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo xī guǎi, jiù yǒu mài shūde, duì bu dui?
3.	Nǐ xiànzài chūqu mǎi píngguǒ ma? dōng	Duì le, wǒ cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo dōng guǎi, jiù yǒu mài píngguǒde, duì bu dui?
4.	Nǐ jīntiān shàngwǔ chūqu mǎi pánziwǎn ma? yòu	Duì le, wǒ cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo yòu guǎi, jiù yǒu mài pánziwǎnde, duì bu dui?
5.	Nǐ jīntiān zǎoshang chūqu mǎi zázhì ma? nán	Duì le, wǒ cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo nán guǎi, jiù yǒu mài zázhìde, duì bu dui?
6.	Nǐ xiànzài chūqu mǎi júzi ma? zuǒ	Duì le, wǒ cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo zuǒ guǎi, jiù yǒu mài júzide, duì bu dui?
7.	Nǐ jīntiān chūqu mǎi píjiǔ ma? xī	Duì le, wǒ cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo xī guǎi, jiù yǒu mài píjiǔde, duì bu dui?

I. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr hěn jìn. (cue) How far do I go? (The New China Bookstore is quite close-by.)	You: Zǒuzhe qù kéyi ma? Zǒu duó yuǎn? (Can I walk? How far do I have to go?)
OR	Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr hěn jìn. (cue) How do I go? (The New China Bookstore is quite close-by.)	Zǒuzhe qù kéyi ma? Zěnme zǒu? (Can I walk? How do I go?)
2.	Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē lí zhèr hěn jìn. How far do I go?	Zǒuzhe qù kéyi ma? Zǒu duó yuǎn?
3.	Xiǎomàibù lí zhèr hěn jìn. How do I go?	Zǒuzhe qù kéyi ma? Zěnme zǒu?
4.	Dōngdān Gōngyuán lí zhèr hěn jìn. How far do I go?	Zǒuzhe qù kéyi ma? Zǒu duó yuǎn?
5.	Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn lí zhèr hěn jìn. How do I go?	Zǒuzhe qù kéyi ma? Zěnme zǒu?
6.	Mínzú Fàndiàn lí zhèr hěn jìn. How far do I go?	Zǒuzhe qù kéyi ma? Zǒu duó yuǎn?

J. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Tā jīntiān chūlai mǎi shū le ma? (cue) no (Did he come out to buy books today?)	You: Tā jīntiān méi chūlai mǎi shū. (He didn't come out to buy books today.)
2.	Nǐ jīntiān shàngwǔ chūqu le ma? yes	Wǒ jīntiān shàngwǔ chūqu le.
3.	Nǐ kànguo nèige diànyǐng ma? no	Wǒ méi kànguo nèige diànyǐng.
4.	Tā kàn nèige diànyǐng le ma? no	Tā méi kàn nèige diànyǐng.
5.	Wáng Xiānsheng xiàwǔ chūqu le ma? yes	Wáng Xiānsheng xiàwǔ chūqu le.
6.	Tā dào nèige càishichǎng qùguo ma? no	Tā méi dào nèige càishichǎng qùguo.
7.	Tā yǐjīng chūlai le ma? not yet	Tā hái méi chūlai ne.

UNIT 4

REFERENCE LIST

(in Taipei)

1.	A:	Qǐngwèn cāntīng zài jǐlóu?	May I ask, on what floor is the dining room?
	B:	Zài èrlóu.	It's on the second floor.
2.	A:	Òu, wǒ zuò diàntī dào èrlóu. Xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu?	Oh, I take the elevator to the second floor. When I have gotten off the elevator, which way do I go?
	B:	Xiàle diàntī, wàng yòu zǒu, jiù shi cāntīng.	When you have gotten off the elevator, go to the right, and that's the restaurant.
3.	A:	Qǐngwèn, nǐmen zhèli yǒu meiyou lǐfǎde dìfang?	May I ask, is there a place to get a haircut here?
	C:	Yǒu. Cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ zǒu. Xià lóu, jiù kànjian le.	Yes. From here you go to the left. Go downstairs, and then you'll see it.
4.*	A:	Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ zǒu.Ránhòu xià lóutī jiù kànjian le, shì bu shi?	From here I first go to the left. After that, when I have gone downstairs, I'll see it. Is that it?
	C:	Shì.	Yes.
5.	A:	Jǐlóu mài dìtú?	On what floor are maps sold?
	D:	Èrlóu.	The second floor.
	A:	Zěnme zǒu?	How do I get there (go)?
	D:	Wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu. Shàng lóu, yòubian jiù shi mài dìtúde.	Go straight to the back. Go upstairs, and the map department is (just) on the right.
6.*	A:	Wǒ xiān wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, shàng lóu, zuǒbian jiù shì, shì bu shi?	First, I go straight to the back. Then, I go upstairs. And the map department is on the left. Is that it?
	D:	Bú shì. Yòubian jiù shi mài dìtúde.	No, the map department is (just) on the right.

---

*This exchange occurs on the P-1 tape only.

7.	A:	Xǐshǒujiān zài shénme dìfang?	Where is the washroom?
	E:	Zài nàli. Wàng lǐ zǒu, zài yòubian.	It's over there. Go all the way in, and it's on the right.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

8	qián	front, ahead
9.	duìmiàn (duìmiànr)	the side facing; across from, opposite, facing
10.	zhèbian (zhèibianr)	this way, this side
11.	nàbian (nèibianr)	that way, that side
12.	lóutī	staircase, stairway, stairs
13.	zǒuláng	corridor
14.	cèsuǒ	toilet, rest room
15.	jìn	to enter
16.	-tou	end (occurs in place words)
17.	-mian(r)	surface (occurs in place words)

185

VOCABULARY

cāntīng	dining room
cèsuǒ	toilet, rest room
diàntī	elevator
duìmiàn (duìmiànr)	the side facing; across from, opposite, facing
hòu	back
hòubian (hòubianr)	the back side
jǐlóu	what floor
jìn	to enter
kànjian	to see
lǐfǎ	to cut hair
lǐfǎde dìfang	a place where hair is cut
-lóu	floor, story of a building
lóutī	staircase, stairway, stairs
-mian(r)	surface (occurs in place words)
nǎbian (něibianr)	which way, which side
nàbian (nèibianr)	that way, that side
qián	front, ahead
shàng	to go up
shàng lóu	to go/come upstairs
-tou	end (occurs in place words)
xià	to go down
xià lóu	to go/come downstairs
xǐshǒujiān	washroom
zhèbian (zhèibianr)	this way, this side
zǒuláng	corridor
zuò	to ride (prepositional verb)

(introduced on C-2 and P-2 tapes)

bàngōngshì	office
wàng	to forget
yàoshi	if
yìbēi	a cup of

186

REFERENCE NOTES

1.	A:	Qǐngwèn, cāntīng zài jǐlóu?	May I ask, on what floor is the dining room?
	B:	Zài èrlóu.	It's on the second floor.

Notes on No. 1

Cāntīng is the word for the dining room of a hotel. A dining room in a house is a fàntīng, and an independent restaurant is a fànguǎnzi (fànguǎnr).

Jǐlóu is the question "what floor," more literally, "what-number floor."

2.	A:	Òu, wǒ zuò diàntī dào èrlóu. Xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu?	Oh, I take the elevator to the second floor. When I have gotten off the elevator, which way do I go?
	B:	Xiàle diàntī, wàng yòu zǒu, jiù shi cāntīng.	When you have gotten off the elevator, go to the right, and that's the restaurant.

Notes on No. 2

Zuò diàntī: The verb zuò, literally "to sit," is also used for "to ride" or "to go via" some means of transportation (car, plane, boat, train, etc.). Thus the phrase zuò diàntī means "to ride the elevator."

Èrlóu: For the number of a floor in a building, the word for "two" is èr, rather than liǎng.

Dào èrlóu: This dào is the main verb, meaning "to reach," "to get to." Literally, the first sentence in exchange 2 means "riding the elevator reach the second floor." The verb dào is commonly used instead of dào... qù, "to go to...," for naming several places to be passed through. Here is another example:

Wǒ xiān dào Běijīng, ránhòu zài dào Shěnyáng.	I'm going to Běijīng first, and then to Shěnyáng.

Notice that the verb "go" is used in the English translation of this sentence, although the Chinese says "reach."

Wàng nǎbian zǒu: To ask the question "Go which way?" in Chinese, you say literally "Towards where go?" Wàng nǎbian (nǎli, nǎr) zǒu? To say "Come this way" and "Go that way," you use the same pattern: Wàng zhèbian (zhèli, zhèr) lái and Wàng nàbian (nàli, nàr) qù.

3.	A:	Qǐngwèn, nǐmen zhèli yǒu meiyou lǐfǎde dìfang?	May I ask, is there a place to get a haircut here?
	C:	Yǒu. Cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ zǒu. Xià lóu, jiù kànjian le.	Yes. From here you go to the left. Go downstairs, and then you'll see it.
4.	A:	Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ zǒu. Ránhòu xià lóutī jiù kànjian le, shì bu shi?	From here I first go to the left. After that, when I have gone downstairs, I'll see it. Is that it?
	C:	Shì.	Yes.

Notes on Nos. 3-4

Lǐfǎde dìfang means, literally, "a place where they cut hair." Note that lǐfǎ is also pronounced lǐfà. *

Xià lóu literally means "descend from an upper story." The English phrase "go/come downstairs" looks at the same action from another point of view: descend to a lower story.

The verb kànjian, "to see," is called a COMPOUND VERB OF RESULT. You have already learned about compound verbs made up of a verb indicating motion (such as chū, "to exit") followed by a verb indicating direction (lái or qù): chūqu, chūlai. Now you see, in exchanges 3 and 4, a compound verb made up of an action verb (kàn, "to look") and a verb expressing the result of that action (jiàn, "to perceive"). Kànjian can be understood as "to look with the result of perceiving," that is, "to see." Contrast kàn with kànjian:

Wǒ kànle kěshi méi kànjiàn.	I looked but I didn't see.

---

*An independent barbershop is called a lǐfǎguǎn, "hair-cutting establishment."

Here are other examples of compound verbs of result containing the verbs tīng, "to listen," and kàn:

Tā gēn ni shuō huà ne. Nǐ tīngjian le meiyou?	She is talking with you. Did you hear her?
Kànjian dìyīge lùkǒu, wàng zuǒ guǎi.	Take your first left. (literally, "When you see the first intersection, turn left.")

(Additional characteristics and uses of compound verbs of result will be explained when examples occur in the unit Reference Lists.)

5.	A:	Jǐlóu mài dìtú?	On what floor are maps sold?
	D:	Èrlóu.	The second floor.
	A:	Zěnme zǒu?	How do I get there (go)?
	D:	Wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu. Shàng lóu, yòubian jiù shi mài dìtúde.	Go straight to the back. Go upstairs, and the map department is (just) on the right.
6.	A:	Wǒ xiān wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, shàng lóu, zuǒbian jiù shì, shì bu shi?	First, I go straight to the back. Then, I go upstairs. And the map department is on the left. Is that it?
	D:	Bú shì. Yòubian jiù shi mài dìtúde.	No, the map department is (just) on the right.

Notes on Nos. 5-6

Jǐlóu mài dìtú? looks as if it should mean "What floor sells maps?" Actually, jǐlóu is a place-word topic, which is translated into English with a prepositional phrase: "on what floor" Then a subject is added: "On what floor do they sell maps?" Or the verb is put into passive tense: "On what floor are maps sold?"

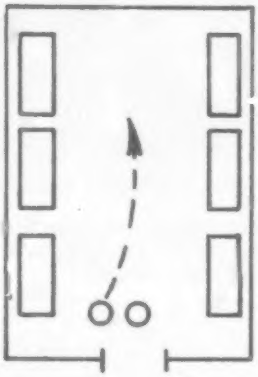
Shàng lóu means, literally, "ascend to an upper story," that is, "go/come upstairs."

7. A:	Xǐshǒujiān zài shénme dìfang?	Where is the washroom?
E:	Zài nàli. Wàng lǐ zǒu, zài yòubian.	It's over there. Go all the way in, and it's on the right.

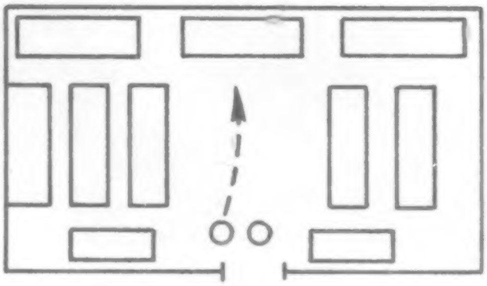
Notes on No. 7

Literally, xǐshǒujiān means a "wash-hands room," which sometimes contains only a sink. In a house, the xǐzǎojiān, meaning literally "take-a-bath room," may contain only a bathtub. The politest way to ask about a bathroom is to use xǐshǒujiān. However, this Westernized way of asking may not be understood everywhere in China. To be sure you are directed to a room with a toilet, use the more specific word cèsuǒ, "toilet," "rest room": Qǐngwèn, cèsuǒ zài náli? "May I ask, where is the toilet?"

Wàng lǐ means, literally, "towards the inside." In English, you say "go to the back," whatever the shape of the room. In Chinese, you say wàng lǐ zǒu for a narrow one-corridor room and wàng hòu zǒu for a wide room.



wàng lǐ zǒu



wàng hòu zǒu

8.	qián	front, ahead
9.	duìmiàn (duìmiànr)	the side facing; across from, opposite, facing
10.	zhèbian (zhèibianr)	this way, this side
11.	nàbian (nèibianr)	that way, that side
12.	lóutī	staircase, stairway, stairs
13.	zǒuláng	corridor
14.	cèsuǒ	toilet, rest room
15.	jìn	to enter
16.	-tou	end (occurs in place words)
17.	-mian(r)	surface (occurs in place words)

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

Duìmiàn is a place word. It is a noun. Like other nouns, duìmiàn can be modified by a de phrase. For example:

Diànyǐngyuàn zài gōngyuánde duìmiàn.	The theater is across from the park. (literally, "The theater is at the park's facing side.")

Zǒuláng: Originally, this word referred to an open, roofed corridor along the side of a building. It now refers also to hallways inside a building.

Guòle zhège zǒuláng jiù shi cāntīng.	When you have passed through this corridor, that's the dining room.

The verb jìn, "to enter," functions in a sentence much like the verb chū, "to exit."

Jìnle zhège dàmén, wàng yòu zǒu, jiù shi cāntīng.	When you have entered the main door, go to the right, and that's the dining room.

Like the verb chū, jìn must be followed either by a word naming the place entered or by a directional ending such as qu or lai.

Nǐ jìnqu, wàng zuǒ zǒu, jiù shi mài bàode.	Go in and go to the left. That's where they sell newspapers.

(An exception is the phrase Qǐng jìn, "Please come in," which does not need the ending -lai.)

The syllable -*tou*, "end," may be added to a direction word such as *hòu*, "back," to change it into a place word, *hòutou*, "back." One-syllable direction words like *lǐ* and *hòu* may be used after *wàng*, "towards." In most other situations, you must use a place word made up of the direction word and an ending such as -*bian(r)*, -*tou*, or -*mian(r)*.

The syllable -*tou* does not combine with as many direction words as -*bian(r)* and -*mian(r)* do. For instance, -*tou* does not combine with "left" and "right." (See the chart below.) Forms ending in -*tou* are especially common in Běijīng.

The syllable -*mian(r)*, "surface," may also be added to a direction word to make a place word. Notice that while this syllable combines with more forms than -*tou* does, -*mian(r)* is not as common as -*bian(r)*.

DIRECTION NAMES	PLACE NAMES		
dōng	dōngbian(r)		
nán	nánbian(r)		
xī	xībian(r)		
běi	běibian(r)		
lǐ	lǐbian(r)	lǐtou	lǐmian(r)
wài	wàibian(r)	wàitou	wàimian(r)
qián	qiánbian(r)	qiántou	qiánmian(r)
hòu	hòubian(r)	hòutou	hòumian(r)
zuǒ	zuǒbian(r)		zuǒmian(r)
yòu	yòubian(r)		yòumian(r)
shàng	shàngbian(r)	shàngtou	shàngmian(r)
xià	xiàbian(r)	xiàtou	xiàmian(r)
	pángbiān(r)		

VOCABULARY BOOSTER

Buildings and Institutions

apartment building	gōngyùlóu
auditorium	dàlĭtáng
bank	yínháng
bar	jiŭbā
bus station	chángtúqìchēzhàn
cafeteria	zìzhùcāntīng
castle	chéngbăo
church	jiàotáng
company	gōngsī
court	făyuàn
dormitory	sùshè
exhibit hall	zhănlănguăn
factory	chăngfáng [*the building*]; gōngchăng [*the thing*]
farm	nóngchăng
fire department	xiāofángduì
gas station	jiāyóuzhàn, qìyóuzhàn
gymnasium	tĭyùguăn
hospital	yīyuàn
hotel	lǚguăn, lǚshè, fàndiàn [*a large, modern hotel with a restaurant; also means "restaurant"*]
library	túshūguăn
market	shìchăng
memorial hall	jìniàntáng
mosque	qīngzhēnsì
motel	qìchē lǚguăn
movie theater	diànyĭngyuàn
museum	bówùguăn
observatory	tiānwéntái
office building	bàngōnglóu
organization	jīguān
pagoda	băotă
palace	gōngdiàn
parking lot	tíngchēchăng
pavilion	tíngzi

police station	jǐngchájú [Taiwan]; gòngānjú [PRC]
post office	yóujú, yóuzhèngjú
prison	jiānyù
railroad station	huǒchēzhàn
ranch	mùchǎng
residence	zhùzhái
restaurant	fànguǎnzi, fànguǎnr, fàndiàn
school	xuéxiào
shop	shāngdiàn
single-story house	píngfáng
skyscraper	mótiān dàshà (mótiān dàxià)
stadium	tǐyùchǎng
supermarket	chāojíshìchǎng
television station	diànshitái
temple	miào
theater	jùchǎng; xìyuàn [old word]
villa	biéshù

And some Chinese terms that do not have simple English translations:

huāyuán yángfáng	Western-style house with garden
shēnzhái dàyuàn	compound of connecting courtyards, each courtyard surrounded by living quarters
sìhéyuànr	compound with houses around a courtyard

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

1.	**Speaker**: Qǐngwèn, cèsuǒ zài jǐlóu? (cue) mài shūde (May I ask, on what floor is the toilet?)	**You**: Qǐngwèn, mài shūde zài jǐlóu? (May I ask, on what floor are books sold?)
2.	Qǐngwèn, mài shūde zài jǐlóu? mài píjiǔde	Qǐngwèn, mài píjiǔde zài jǐlóu?
3.	Qǐngwèn, mài píjiǔde zài jǐlóu? mài tángde	Qǐngwèn, mài tángde zài jǐlóu?
4.	Qǐngwèn, mài tángde zài jǐlóu? xiǎomàibù	Qǐngwèn, xiǎomàibù zài jǐlóu?
5.	Qǐngwèn, xiǎomàibù zài jǐlóu? cèsuǒ	Qǐngwèn, cèsuǒ zài jǐlóu?
6.	Qǐngwèn, cèsuǒ zài jǐlóu? mài huāpíngde	Qǐngwèn, mài huāpíngde zài jǐlóu?

B. Transformation Drill

1.	**Speaker**: Qǐngwèn, cāntīng zài jǐlóu? (cue) èr (May I ask, on what floor is the dining room?)	**You**: Qǐngwèn, cāntīng zài èrlóu, duì bu duì? (May I ask, the dining room is on the second floor. Is that correct?)
2.	Qǐngwèn, cèsuǒ zài jǐlóu? sān	Qǐngwèn, cèsuǒ zài sānlóu, duì bu duì?
3.	Qǐngwèn, mài tángde zài jǐlóu? wǔ	Qǐngwèn, mài tángde zài wǔlóu, duì bu duì?
4.	Qǐngwèn, mài shūde zài jǐlóu? sì	Qǐngwèn, mài shūde zài sìlóu, duì bu duì?
5.	Qǐngwèn, mài huāpíngde zài jǐlóu? liù	Qǐngwèn, mài huāpíngde zài liùlóu, duì bu duì?

6.	Qǐngwèn, mài yǔsǎnde zài jǐlóu?	sān	Qǐngwèn, mài yǔsǎnde zài sānlóu, duì bu dui?
7.	Qǐngwèn, mài féizàode zài jǐlóu?	èr	Qǐngwèn, mài féizàode zài èrlóu, duì bu dui?

C. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Wǒ yào mǎi shū. (I want to buy a book.)	(cue) shūdiàn	You: Wǒ yào mǎi shū. Qǐngwèn, zhèr fùjìn yǒu meiyou shūdiàn? (I want to buy a book. May I ask, is there a bookstore around here?)
2.	Wǒ yào mǎi táng.	mài tángde	Wǒ yào mǎi táng. Qǐngwèn, zhèr fùjìn yǒu meiyou mài tángde?
3.	Wǒ yào mǎi dìtú.	shūdiàn	Wǒ yào mǎi dìtú. Qǐngwèn, zhèr fùjìn yǒu meiyou shūdiàn?
4.	Wǒ yào huàn qián.	yínháng	Wǒ yào huàn qián. Qǐngwèn, zhèr fùjìn yǒu meiyou yínháng?
5.	Wǒ yào kàn diànyǐng.	diànyǐngyuàn	Wǒ yào kàn diànyǐng. Qǐngwèn, zhèr fùjìn yǒu meiyou diànyǐngyuàn?
6.	Wǒ yào mǎi bào.	mài bàode	Wǒ yào mǎi bào. Qǐngwèn, zhèr fùjìn yǒu meiyou mài bàode?
7.	Wǒ yào mǎi féizào.	shāngdiàn	Wǒ yào mǎi féizào. Qǐngwèn, zhèr fùjìn yǒu meiyou shāngdiàn?

D. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Jǐlóu mài dìtú? (On what floor are maps sold?)	(cue) èrlóu	You: Èrlóu yǒu meiyou mài dìtúde? (On the second floor is there a place where maps are sold?)
2.	Jǐlóu mài huāpíng?	sānlóu	Sānlóu yǒu meiyou mài huāpíngde?
3.	Jǐlóu mài táng?	wǔlóu	Wǔlóu yǒu meiyou mài tángde?
4.	Jǐlóu mài pánziwǎn?	sānlóu	Sānlóu yǒu meiyou mài pánziwǎnde?

5.	Jĭlóu mài féizào?	sìlóu	Sìlóu yŏu meiyou mài féizàode?
6.	Jĭlóu mài zázhì?	liùlóu	Liùlóu yŏu meiyou mài zázhìde?
7.	Jĭlóu mài yŭsăn?	wŭlóu	Wŭlóu yŏu meiyou mài yŭsănde?

E. Expansion Drill

1.	Speaker: Nín zuò diàntī dào èrlóu. (cue) nèibian (Take the elevator to the second floor.)	You: Òu, zuò diàntī dào èrlóu, xiàle diàntī, wàng nèibian zŏu, duì bu dui? (Oh, I take the elevator to the second floor. After I have gotten off the elevator, I go that way. Is that correct?)
2.	Nín zuò diàntī dào sìlóu. yòu	Òu, zuò diàntī dào sìlóu, xiàle diàntī wàng yòu zŏu, duì bu dui?
3.	Nín zuò diàntī dào wŭlóu. zuŏ	Òu, zuò diàntī dào wŭlóu, xiàle diàntī wàng zuŏ zŏu, duì bu dui?
4.	Nín zuò diàntī dào liùlóu. yìzhí	Òu, zuò diàntī dào liùlóu, xiàle diàntī yìzhí zŏu, duì bu dui?
5.	Nín zuò diàntī dào sānlóu. wàng yòu yìzhí	Òu, zuò diàntī dào sānlóu, xiàle diàntī wàng yòu yìzhí zŏu, duì bu dui?
6.	Nín zuò diàntī dào qīlóu. nèibian	Òu, zuò diàntī dào qīlóu, xiàle diàntī wàng nèibian zŏu, duì bu dui?
7.	Nín zuò diàntī dào èrlóu. zuŏbian	Òu, zuò diàntī dào èrlóu, xiàle diàntī wàng zuŏbian zŏu, duì bu dui?

F. Expansion Drill

1.	**Speaker:** Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng yòu zǒu. (cue) xià lóu (First, I go from here to the right.)	**You:** Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng yòu zǒu. Ránhòu xià lóu jiù kànjian le, shì bu shi? (First, I go from here to the right. Then I go downstairs, and I'll see it. Right?)
2.	Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ zǒu. shàng lóu	Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ zǒu. Ránhòu shàng lóu jiù kànjian le, shì bu shi?
3.	Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng hòu zǒu. xià lóu	Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng hòu zǒu. Ránhòu xià lóu jiù kànjian le, shì bu shi?
4.	Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng nàbian zǒu. shàng lóu	Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng nàbian zǒu. Ránhòu shàng lóu jiù kànjian le, shì bu shi?
5.	Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu. xià lóu	Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu. Ránhòu xià lóu jiù kànjian le, shì bu shi?
6.	Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng yòu yìzhí zǒu. shàng lóu	Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng yòu yìzhí zǒu. Ránhòu shàng lóu jiù kànjian le, shì bu shi?
7.	Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ yìzhí zǒu. xià lóu	Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ yìzhí zǒu. Ránhòu xià lóu jiù kànjian le, shì bu shi?

G. Transformation Drill

1.	**Speaker:** Xiàle diàntī wàng yòu zǒu jiù shi mài dìtúde. (The map department is ⌜just⌝ to the right when you get off the elevator.)	**You:** Duìbuqǐ, xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu jiù shi mài dìtúde? (Excuse me, once I get off the elevator, which way is the map department?)
2.	Xiàle diàntī wàng zuǒ zǒu jiù shi mài shūde.	Duìbuqǐ, xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu jiù shi mài shūde?

3.	Xiàle diàntī wàng hòu zǒu jiù shi mài huāpíngde.	Duìbuqǐ, xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu jiù shi mài huāpíngde?
4.	Xiàle diàntī wàng yòu yìzhí zǒu jiù shi mài yǔsǎnde.	Duìbuqǐ, xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu jiù shi mài yǔsǎnde?
5.	Xiàle diàntī wàng zuǒ yìzhí zǒu jiù shi mài tángde.	Duìbuqǐ, xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu jiù shi mài tángde?
6.	Xiàle diàntī wàng nàbian yìzhí zǒu jiù shi mài pánziwǎnde.	Duìbuqǐ, xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu jiù shi mài pánziwǎnde?
7.	Xiàle diàntī wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu jiù shi mài zìdiǎnde.	Duìbuqǐ, xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu jiù shi mài zìdiǎnde?

H. Response Drill

1.	**Speaker**: Nǐ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, shàng lóu, zuǒbian jiù shì. (Go straight to the back, up the stairs, and it's on the left.)	**You**: Hǎo, wǒ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, shàng lóu wàng zuǒ zǒu, jiù kànjian le, shì bu shi? (Okay, I go directly to the back, upstairs and to the left, and I'll see it. Right?)
2.	Nǐ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, shàng lóu, yòubian jiù shì.	Hǎo, wǒ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, shàng lóu, wàng yòu zǒu, jiù kànjian le, shì bu shi?
3.	Nǐ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, xià lóu, zuǒbian jiù shì.	Hǎo, wǒ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, xià lóu, wàng zuǒbian zǒu, jiù kànjian le, shì bu shi?
4.	Nǐ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, xià lóu, yòubian jiù shì.	Hǎo, wǒ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, xià lóu, wàng yòubian zǒu, jiù kànjian le, shì bu shi?
5.	Nǐ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, shàng lóu, duìmiàn jiù shì.	Hǎo, wǒ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, shàng lóu, yìzhí zǒu, jiù kànjian le, shì bu shi?
6.	Nǐ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, shàng lóu, yòubian jiù shì.	Hǎo, wǒ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, shàng lóu, wàng yòubian zǒu, jiù kànjian le, shì bu shi?
7.	Nǐ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, xià lóu, duìmiàn jiù shì.	Hǎo, wǒ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, xià lóu, yìzhí zǒu, jiù kànjian le, shì bu shi?

I. Substitution Drill

1.	Speaker: Xǐshǒujiān zài shénme dìfang? (cue) cèsuǒ (Where is the washroom?)	You: Cèsuǒ zài shénme dìfang? (Where is the toilet?)
2.	Cèsuǒ zài shénme dìfang? lóutī	Lóutī zài shénme dìfang?
3.	Lóutī zài shénme dìfang? diàntī	Diàntī zài shénme dìfang?
4.	Diàntī zài shénme dìfang? mài bàode	Mài bàode zài shénme dìfang?
5.	Mài bàode zài shénme dìfang? mài yǔsǎnde	Mài yǔsǎnde zài shénme dìfang?
6.	Mài yǔsǎnde zài shénme dìfang? cāntīng	Cāntīng zài shénme dìfang?

J. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Qǐngwèn, xǐshǒujiān zài shénme dìfang? (cue) lóutī pángbiān (May I ask, where is the washroom?)	You: Zài nàli, zài lóutī pángbiān. (It's there, beside the staircase.)
2.	Qǐngwèn, cèsuǒ zài shénme dìfang? lóutī yòubian	Zài nàli, zài lóutī yòubian.
3.	Qǐngwèn, lóutī zài shénme dìfang? hòubian	Zài nàli, zài hòubian.
4.	Qǐngwèn, cāntīng zài shénme dìfang? zuǒbian	Zài nàli, zài zuǒbian.
5.	Qǐngwèn, mài huāpíngde zài shénme dìfang? diàntī pángbiān	Zài nàli, zài diàntī pángbiān.

6. Qǐngwèn, mài féizàode zài shénme dìfang? — Zài nàli, zài lóutī pángbiān.
   lóutī pángbiān

7. Qǐngwèn, mài pánziwǎnde zài shénme dìfang? — Zài nàli, zài lóutī zuǒbian.
   lóutī zuǒbian

View of downtown Shànghǎi from the top of the Overseas Chinese Hotel, across the street from People's Park

UNIT 5

REFERENCE LIST

(in Taipei)

1.	A:	Duìbuqǐ.	Excuse me.
	B:	Nǐ yǒu shénme shì a?	What can I do for you?
2.	A:	Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì shénme lù?	May I ask, what road is this?
	B:	Zhè shi Nánjīng Xīlù.	This is Nánjīng West Road.
3.	B:	Nǐ zhǎo shénme dìfang?	What place are you looking for?
	A:	Wǒ zhǎo Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn, Wǔshisìxiàng.	I am looking for Lane 54 of Nánjīng East Road, Section 1.
4.	C:	Wǒ zhǎo Zhōngshān Běilù.	I am looking for Zhōngshān North Road.
5.	B:	Nǐ zǒucuò le. Zhè shi Nánjīng Xīlù.	You went the wrong way. This is Nánjīng West Road.
	B:	Nǐ wàng nàbian zǒu.	You go that way.
	B:	Guò sāntiáo jiē, jiù shi Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn.	Cross three streets, and that's Nánjīng East Road, Section 1.
6.*	A:	Òu, wǒ zǒucuò le.	Oh, I went the wrong way.
	A:	Nǐ shuō wǒ wàng nàbian zǒu.	You say I should go that way.
	A:	Guò sāntiáo jiē, jiù shi Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn, shì bu shi?	Cross three streets, and that's Nánjīng East Road, Section 1. Is that it?
	B:	Shì.	Yes.
7.	B:	Dàole Yíduàn yǐhòu, qǐng zài wèn biéren ba.	After you have gotten to Section 1, please ask someone else.
	A:	Hǎo. Xièxie.	All right. Thanks.
8.	A:	Qǐngwèn, Wǔnòng zài náli?	May I ask, where is Alley 5?
	D:	Nǐ zài wàng qián zǒu yìdiǎn.	You walk (straight) ahead a little farther.
	D:	Yòubian dìyīge lùkǒu jiù shi Wǔnòng.	The first intersection on the right is Alley 5.

9.*	A:	Wǒ zài wàng qián zǒu yìdiǎn. Wǔnòng zài yòubian, shì bu shi?	I go ahead a little bit farther; Alley 5 is on the right side. Is that it?
	D:	Shì. Yòubian dìyīge lùkǒu jiù shì.	Yes. It's the first intersection on the right.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

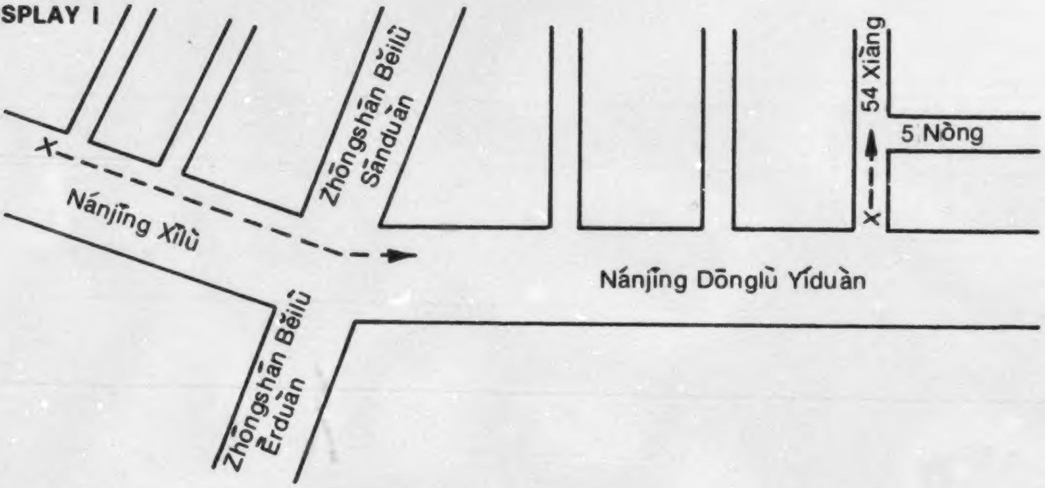
10.	hútong (hútòngr)	a narrow street, a lane (Běijīng)
11.	mén (ménr)	gate, door
12.	ménkǒu (ménkǒur)	doorway, gateway, entrance
13.	qiáo	bridge
14.	tiānqiáo	pedestrian overpass
15.	dìxià xíngrén dào	pedestrian underground walkway

---

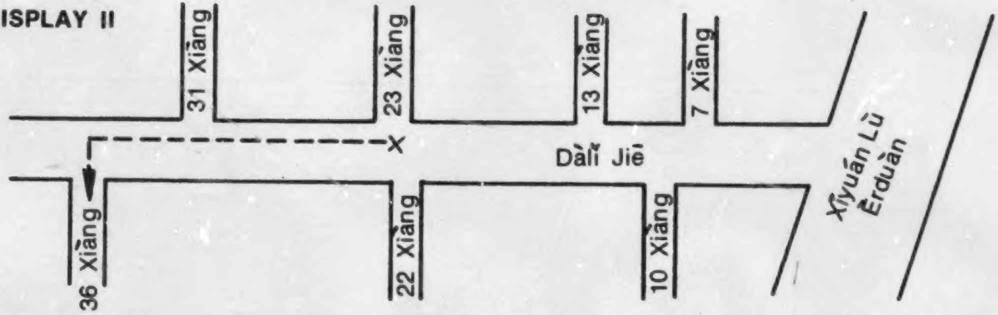
*This exchange occurs on the P-1 tape only.

MAPS FOR C-1 TAPE

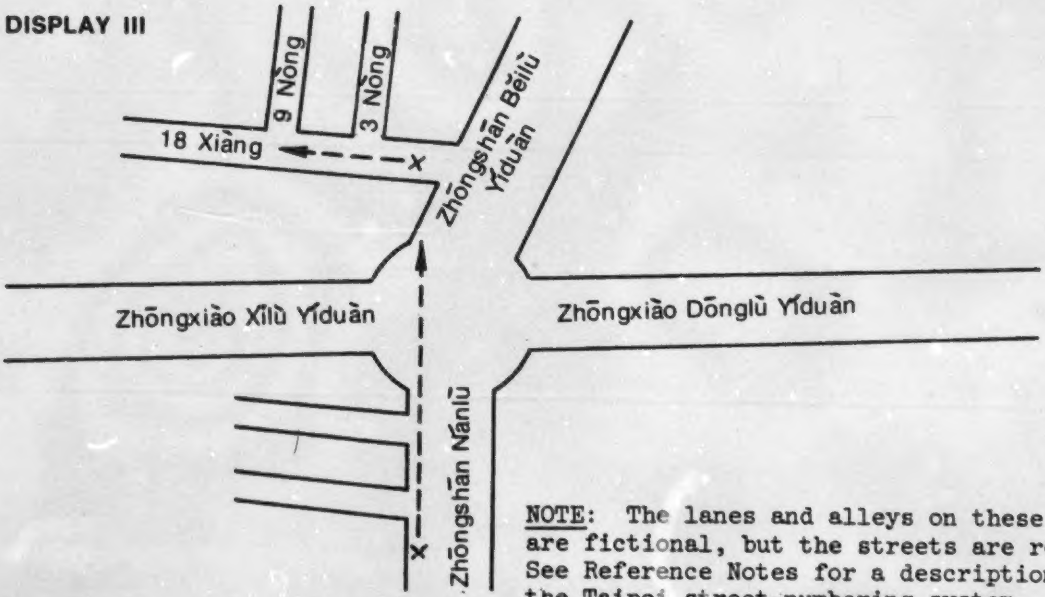
DISPLAY I


X
Nánjīng Xīlù
Zhōngshān Běilù Sānduàn
54 Xiàng
5 Nòng
X
Nánjīng Dōnglù Yīduàn
Zhōngshān Běilù Èrduàn

DISPLAY II


31 Xiàng
23 Xiàng
13 Xiàng
7 Xiàng
X
Dàlǐ Jiē
Xīyuán Lù Èrduàn
36 Xiàng
22 Xiàng
10 Xiàng

DISPLAY III


9 Nòng
3 Nòng
18 Xiàng
X
Zhōngshān Běilù Yīduàn
Zhōngxiào Xīlù Yīduàn
Zhōngxiào Dōnglù Yīduàn
Zhōngshān Nánlù
X

NOTE: The lanes and alleys on these maps are fictional, but the streets are real. See Reference Notes for a description of the Taipei street-numbering system.

VOCABULARY

biéren	another person, someone else
cuò	to make a mistake, to be wrong
dàmén(r)	gate
-dào	route, path
dìxià	underground
dìxià xíngrén dào	pedestrian underground walkway
-duàn	section, block
guò	to cross, to pass
hútong (hútòngr)	a narrow street, a lane (Běijīng)
lòng	alley
mén(r)	gate, door
ménkǒu(r)	doorway, gateway, entrance
nǎ-	which?
nǎge	which?
Nánjīng Dōnglù	Nánjīng East Road
Nánjīng Xīlù	Nánjīng West Road
nòng	alley (Taiwan)
qiáo	bridge
shì	matter, affair, business
tiānqiáo	pedestrian overpass
-tiáo	(counter for long, winding things)
wèn	to ask
xiàng	lane
xíngrén	pedestrian
zhǎo	to look for
Zhōngshān Běilù	Zhōngshān North Road
zǒucuò le	to have gone the wrong way

(introduced on C-2 tape)

bān jiā	to move one's residence
dàgài	probably
huí	the opposite direction
zǒuguò le	to have walked past

REFERENCE NOTES

1.	A:	Duìbuqǐ.	Excuse me.
	B:	Nǐ yǒu shénme shì a?	What can I do for you?

Notes on No. 1

Shì: This noun has a very abstract meaning that does not translate easily into English. Some of its commoner translations are "matter," "business," "affair," and "thing." You have learned that *dōngxī* can also mean "thing." *Dōngxī* is used to refer to tangible things, while *shì* refers to abstract matters.

When used to answer someone who is asking for help, the question *Nǐ yǒu shénme shì a?* is an offer of help.

Nǐ	yǒu	shénme	shì a?
(You	have	what	problem?)

"What's your problem?" i.e.,
"What can I do for you?"

The same question (without the softening *a*) might be rather rude if it is directed to a person who is wandering around an office building.

Nǐ	yǒu	shénme	shì?
(You	have	what	business?)

"What business do you have (here)?"
i.e., "What are you doing here?"

2.	A:	Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì shénme lù?	May I ask, what road is this?
	B:	Zhè shi Nánjīng Xīlù.	This is Nánjīng West Road.

206

Notes on No. 2

Zhè- is the way zhèi-, "this," is pronounced outside of Bĕijīng. From this point on in these course materials, the forms zhè-, "this," nà-, "that," and nă-, "which," will be used for all non-Bĕijīng speakers.* In a conversation, you should use these forms if another person uses them.

-tiáo is a counter for long, twisting things, such as roads, rivers, fish, and dragons.

In English you say "What road is this?" In Chinese you say "What road is this road?" Zhèitiáo lù shì shénme lù? You may not leave out the last word, lù.

Nánjīng Xīlù: In Guăngzhōu, Shànghăi, Taipei, and many other cities, the street direction is given after the street name.

Nánjīng Xīlù	Nánjīng West Road

In Bĕijīng, the street direction is given before the street name.

Xī Chángān Jiē	West Chángān Street

3.	B:	Nĭ zhăo shénme dìfang?	What place are you looking for?
	A:	Wŏ zhăo Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn, Wŭshisìxiàng.	I'm looking for Lane 54 of Nánjīng East Road, Section 1.

Notes on No. 3

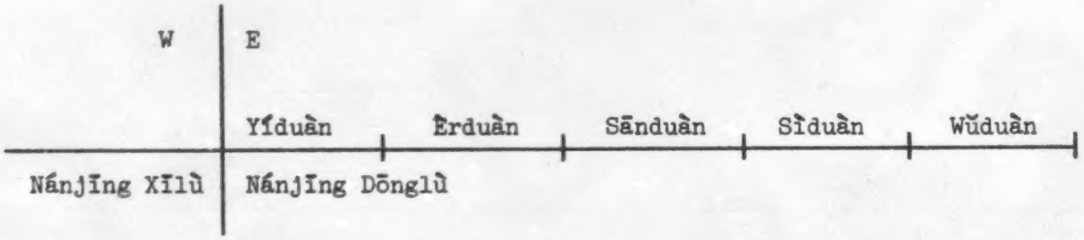
Zhăo, "to look for," "to try to find"

Nĭ zhăo shéi?	Who are you looking for?
Tā shì bu shi zhăo gōngzuò?	Is he looking for work?

---

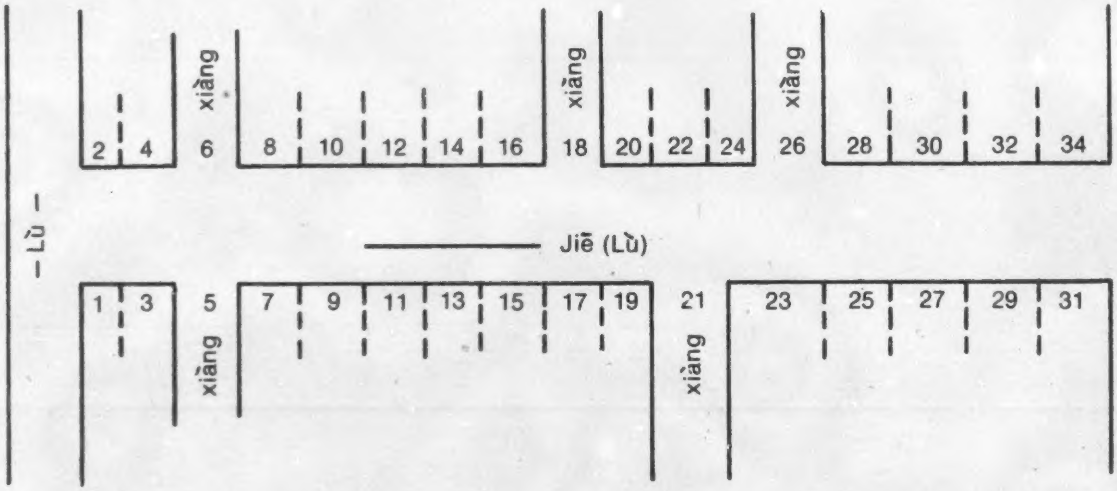
*Actually, Bĕijīng speakers do use zhè-, nà-, and nă- in certain contexts, especially when reading aloud. But in ordinary conversation they mostly use zhèi-, nèi-, and nĕi-.

Yíduàn: Streets that are divided into North and South or East and West in Taipei may also be divided into sections.


W
E
Yíduàn
Èrduàn
Sānduàn
Sìduàn
Wǔduàn
Nánjīng Xīlù
Nánjīng Dōnglù

The sections of a street, like the floors of a building, are numbered yī, èr, sān, and so on, and do not need the prefix dì-.

Xiàng: Lanes in Taipei are numbered as if they were houses. You can find your way to a certain lane by observing the numbers of the houses on the same side of the street. Even numbers are on one side, and odd numbers are on the other.


xiàng
xiàng
xiàng
2
4
6
8
10
12
14
16
18
20
22
24
26
28
30
32
34
Lù
Jiē (Lù)
1
3
5
7
9
11
13
15
17
19
21
23
25
27
29
31
xiàng
xiàng

Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn, Wǔshisìxiàng, "Nánjīng East Road, Section 1, Lane 54": In giving a Chinese address, you go from larger to smaller areas, mentioning the lane after the road. In English, however, the address begins with the smaller area: "Lane 54, Nánjīng East Road, Section 1."

4.	C:	Wǒ zhǎo Zhōngshān Běilù.	I am looking for Zhōngshān North Road.
5.	B:	Nǐ zǒucuò le. Zhè shi Nánjīng Xīlù.	You went the wrong way. This is Nánjīng West Road.
	B:	Nǐ wàng nàbian zǒu.	You go that way.
	B:	Guò sāntiáo jiē, jiù shi Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn.	Cross three streets, and that's Nánjīng East Road, Section 1.

Notes on No. 5

Zǒucuò le is a compound verb of result. Zǒucuò le is literally zǒu, "to walk," and cuò, "to be wrong/mistaken/erroneous": "to have walked with the result of being wrong."

The marker le is used in "I'm wrong," Wǒ cuò le. Notice that the marker is also used for the compound verb zǒucuò le.

The syllable -cuò may be used with other action verbs to indicate a result. For instance, there is

shuōcuò le	to have said incorrectly
tīngcuò le	to have heard incorrectly
xiěcuò le	to have written incorrectly
niàncuò le	to have read (something aloud) incorrectly
Òu, wǒ mǎicuò le! Zhège tài xiǎo le!	Oh, I've bought the wrong thing! This is too small!
Nǐ kàncuò le. Yínháng cóng jiǔdiǎn zhōng jiù kāi mén le.	You read it wrong. The bank has been open since 9 a.m.
Nǐ kàncuòle zhōng, xiànzài yǐjīng bādiǎn bàn le.	You read the clock wrong. It's already 8:30.

Guò, "to cross," "to pass": This word can refer to time as well as to space.

Guòle zhèige lùkǒu, zài wàng qián zǒu bù yuǎn, jiù dào nèige xuéxiào le.	After you have crossed this intersection, then go a little farther ahead, and you'll be at the school.

	A:	Míngtiān wǒ qǐng ni kàn diànyǐng, hǎo bu hǎo?	How about my treating you to a movie tomorrow?
	B:	Zhèi liǎngtiān dōu yǒu kè, guò liǎngtiān zài shuō ba.	I have classes the next couple of days; let's see about it in a couple of days.
		Wǒ xiǎng, guòle jǐge xīngqī, nǐde bìng jiù kéyi hǎo le.	I think that after a few weeks have passed your illness will be all better.

6.	A:	Òu, wǒ zǒucuò le.	Oh, I went the wrong way.
	A:	Nǐ shuō wǒ wàng nàbian zǒu.	You say I should go that way.
	A:	Guò sāntiáo jiē, jiù shi Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn, shì bu shi?	Cross three streets, and that's Nánjīng East Road, Section 1. Is that it?
	B:	Shì.	Yes.

Notes on No. 6

Nǐ shuō: In exchange 6, shuō means "to say that." You have already learned another meaning: "to speak (a language)." (The "should" in the translation of the second sentence captures the meaning of the Chinese directions, which are stronger than a statement but weaker than a command.)

Guò sāntiáo jiē, "cross three streets": In English you would probably say "go three blocks," but in Chinese directions are usually given in terms of streets. The word lùkǒu, "intersection," is also used: guò jǐge lùkǒu, "go a few blocks."

7.	B:	Dàole Yíduàn yǐhòu, qǐng zài wèn biéren ba.	After you have gotten to Section 1, please ask someone else.
	A:	Hǎo. Xièxie.	All right. Thanks.

Note on No. 7

Zài, "and then": In exchange 7, the adverb zài is used for the second action in a sequence. It is not easily translated into English.

210

8.	A:	Qǐngwèn, Wǔnòng zài náli?	May I ask, where is Alley 5?
	D:	Nǐ zài wàng qián zǒu yìdiǎn.	You walk (straight) ahead a little farther.
	D:	Yòubian dìyīge lùkǒu jiù shi Wǔnòng.	The first intersection on the right is Alley 5.

Notes on No. 8

Nòng, "alley," has an alternate pronunciation: lòng.

In order of increasing size, streets in Taipei are named nòng, "alley," xiàng, "lane," jiē, "street," and lù, "road." In Běijīng, a large street is called jiē, "street," or dàjiē, "boulevard," and a small street is called hútong, "alley." Unlike alleys in Taipei, alleys in Běijīng usually have names rather than numbers.

Nǐ zài wàng qián zǒu yìdiǎn: Here, zài has a new meaning: "more/again/farther/in addition." The combination of the adverb zài before the verb and yìdiǎn after the verb means "a little more," "a little farther." Here are some other examples:

Nǐ zài chī yidiǎnr ba!	Have some more! (Eat some more!)
Nǐ zài zuò yihuǐr ba!	Sit a while longer, why don't you? [invitation to a guest to stay longer]
Zài gěi wo yige ba.	Give me another one (one more).
Zài gěi wo liǎngge ba.	Give me two more.

Qián by itself may be used only in certain special phrases. One of these is wàng qián... (followed by a verb like zǒu). The term qiánbian (qiánbianr) means "directly in front of." * To say "in front of the door" or "up front," you must use a place word (qiánbian, qiántou, qiánmian).

---

* The word for "across from" or "opposite" is duìmiàn (duìmiànr).

211

There are several single-syllable direction words like qián which you may use after wàng. In most other contexts, though, a longer form, a place word, must be used.

	qián				qiánbian (qiántou, qiánmian)
	hòu				hòubian (hòutou, hòumian)
	shàng				shàngbian (shàngtou, shàngmian)
	xià				xiàbian (xiàtou, xiàmian)
	zuǒ				zuǒbian (zuǒmian)
	yòu				yòubian (yòumian)
wàng	lǐ	zǒu	BUT	zài	lǐbian (lǐtou, lǐmian)
	wài				wàibian (wàitou, wàimian)
	dōng				dōngbian
	nán				nánbian
	xī				xībian
	běi				běibian

9.	A:	Wǒ zài wàng qián zǒu yìdiǎn. Wǔnòng zài yòubian, shì bu shi?	I go ahead a little bit farther; Alley 5 is on the right side. Is that it?
	D:	Shì. Yòubian dìyīge lùkǒu jiù shì.	Yes. It's the first intersection on the right.

10.	hútong (hútòngr)	a narrow street, a lane (Běijīng)
11.	mén (ménr)	gate, door
12.	ménkǒu (mènkǒur)	doorway, gateway, entrance
13.	qiáo	bridge
14.	tiānqiáo	pedestrian overpass
15.	dìxià xíngrén dào	pedestrian underground walkway

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

Mén: In addition to meaning "door," this word also means "gate." The word dàmén may also be used to refer to a main gate, as well as a main door.

Tiānqiáo literally means "sky bridge."

Guòle zhèige tiānqiáo, jiù shi Dìyī Gōngsī.	When you have crossed this pedestrian overpass, that's the First Company.

Dìxià xíngrén dào literally means "underground pedestrian route."

Chūle zhège dìxià xíngrén dào, wàng yòu zǒu, jiù shi mài bàode.	When you have come out of this pedestrian underground walkway, go to the right, and that's where they sell newspapers.

Elementary school children in Taipei

DRILLS

A. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì shénme lù? (cue) Nánjīng Dōnglù (May I ask, what road is this?)	You: Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì Nánjīng Dōnglù ma? (May I ask, is this Nánjīng East Road?)
2.	Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì shénme lù? Zhōngshān Běilù	Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì Zhōngshān Běilù ma?
3.	Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì shénme lù? Xīnshēng Nánlù	Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì Xīnshēng Nánlù ma?
4.	Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì shénme lù? Nánjīng Xīlù	Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì Nánjīng Xīlù ma?
5.	Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì shénme lù? Xīnshēng Běilù	Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì Xīnshēng Běilù ma?
6.	Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì shénme lù? Zhōnghuá Lù	Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì Zhōnghuá Lù ma?
7.	Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì shénme lù? Shànghǎi Lù	Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì Shànghǎi Lù ma?

B. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Zhè shì Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn. (This is Nánjīng East Road, Section 1.)	You: Duìbuqǐ, zhè shì Nánjīng Dōnglù jǐduàn? (Excuse me, what section of Nánjīng East Road is this?)
2.	Zhè shì Zhōngshān Běilù Èrduàn.	Duìbuqǐ, zhè shì Zhōngshān Běilù jǐduàn?
3.	Zhè shì Xīnshēng Nánlù Yíduàn.	Duìbuqǐ, zhè shì Xīnshēng Nánlù jǐduàn?
4.	Zhè shì Rénài Lù Sānduàn.	Duìbuqǐ, zhè shì Rénài Lù jǐduàn?

5.	Zhè shì Hángzhōu Nánlù Yíduàn.	Duìbuqǐ, zhè shì Hángzhōu Nánlù jǐduàn?
6.	Zhè shì Hépíng Xīlù Èrduàn.	Duìbuqǐ, zhè shì Hépíng Xīlù jǐduàn?
7.	Zhè shì Nánjīng Xīlù Yíduàn.	Duìbuqǐ, zhè shì Nánjīng Xīlù jǐduàn?

C. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Nǐ zhǎo Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn ma? (cue) 5 (Are you looking for Nánjīng East Road, Section 1?)	You: Shì, wǒ zhǎo Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn Wǔxiàng. (Yes, I'm looking for Lane 5 of Nánjīng East Road, Section 1.)
2.	Nǐ zhǎo Zhōngshān Běilù Èrduàn ma? 18	Shì, wǒ zhǎo Zhōngshān Běilù Èrduàn Shíbáxiàng.
3.	Nǐ zhǎo Hépíng Xīlù Yíduàn ma? 6	Shì, wǒ zhǎo Hépíng Xīlù Yíduàn Liùxiàng.
4.	Nǐ zhǎo Xīnshēng Nánlù Sānduàn ma? 4	Shì, wǒ zhǎo Xīnshēng Nánlù Sānduàn Sìxiàng.
5.	Nǐ zhǎo Zhōngshān Nánlù Èrduàn ma? 14	Shì, wǒ zhǎo Zhōngshān Nánlù Èrduàn Shísìxiàng.
6.	Nǐ zhǎo Rénài Lù Sānduàn ma? 9	Shì, wǒ zhǎo Rénài Lù Sānduàn Jiǔxiàng.
7.	Nǐ zhǎo Zìyóu Lù Yíduàn ma? 11	Shì, wǒ zhǎo Zìyóu Lù Yíduàn Shíyīxiàng.

D. Transformation Drill

1.	**Speaker**: Nǐ wàng nàbian zǒu. (Go that way.)	(cue) sān	**You**: Hǎo, wǒ wàng nàbian zǒu, guò sāntiáo jiē jiù shì, duì bu duì? (Okay, I go that way, and after crossing three streets that's it. Is that correct?)
2.	Nǐ wàng yòu zǒu.	liǎng	Hǎo, wǒ wàng yòu zǒu, guò liǎngtiáo jiē jiù shì, duì bu duì?
3.	Nǐ wàng dōng zǒu.	sì	Hǎo, wǒ wàng dōng zǒu, guò sìtiáo jiē jiù shì, duì bu duì?
4.	Nǐ wàng xī zǒu.	yī	Hǎo, wǒ wàng xī zǒu, guò yìtiáo jiē jiù shì , duì bu duì?
5.	Nǐ wàng nán zǒu.	wǔ	Hǎo, wǒ wàng nán zǒu, guò wǔtiáo jiē jiù shì, duì bu duì?
6.	Nǐ wàng běi zǒu.	liǎng	Hǎo, wǒ wàng běi zǒu, guò liǎngtiáo jiē jiù shì, duì bu duì?
7.	Nǐ wàng zuǒ zǒu.	sì	Hǎo, wǒ wàng zuǒ zǒu, guò sìtiáo jiē jiù shì, duì bu duì?

E. Transformation Drill

1.	**Speaker**: Wàng qián zǒu yìdiǎn. Wǔnòng zài yòubian. (Go ahead a bit, and Alley 5 is on the right.)	**You**: Wǒ zài wàng qián zǒu yìdiǎn. Wǔnòng zài yòubian, shì bu shi? (I go a bit farther ahead, and Alley 5 is on the right. Is that it?)
2.	Wàng nàbian zǒu yìdiǎn. Liùnòng zài zuǒbian.	Wǒ zài wàng nàbian zǒu yìdiǎn. Liùnòng zài zuǒbian, shì bu shi?
3.	Wàng dōng zǒu yìdiǎn. Sānnòng zài yòubian.	Wǒ zài wàng dōng zǒu yìdiǎn. Sānnòng zài yòubian, shì bu shi?
4.	Wàng qián zǒu yìdiǎn. Shínòng zài yòubian.	Wǒ zài wàng qián zǒu yìdiǎn. Shínòng zài yòubian, shì bu shi?

5.	Wàng xī zŏu yìdiăn. Shíèrnòng zài zuŏbian.	Wŏ zài wàng xī zŏu yìdiăn. Shíèrnòng zài zuŏbian, shì bu shi?
6.	Wàng nán zŏu yìdiăn. Shíqínòng zài zuŏbian.	Wŏ zài wàng nán zŏu yìdiăn. Shíqínòng zài zuŏbian, shì bu shi?
7.	Wàng bĕi zŏu yìdiăn. Bánòng zài zuŏbian.	Wŏ zài wàng bĕi zŏu yìdiăn. Bánòng zài zuŏbian, shì bu shi?

F. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Wŏ zài wàng qián zŏu yìdiăn. Wŭnòng zài yòubian, duì bu dui? (cue) dìyíge (I go a bit farther ahead, and Alley 5 is on the right. Is that correct?)	You: Wŏ zài wàng qián zŏu yìdiăn. Yòubian dìyíge lùkŏu jiù shi Wŭnòng, duì bu dui? (I go a bit farther ahead, and the first intersection on the right is Alley 5. Is that correct?)
2.	Wŏ zài wàng zuŏ zŏu yìdiăn. Sānnòng zài zuŏbian, duì bu dui? dìsìge	Wŏ zài wàng zuŏ zŏu yìdiăn. Zuŏbian dìsìge lùkŏu jiù shi Sānnòng, duì bu dui?
3.	Wŏ zài wàng qián zŏu yìdiăn. Liùnòng zài yòubian, duì bu dui? dìèrge	Wŏ zài wàng qián zŏu yìdiăn. Yòubian dìèrge lùkŏu jiù shi Liùnòng, duì bu dui?
4.	Wŏ zài wàng xī zŏu yìdiăn. Sānnòng zài yòubian, duì bu dui? dìsānge	Wŏ zài wàng xī zŏu yìdiăn. Yòubian dìsānge lùkŏu jiù shi Sānnòng, duì bu dui?
5.	Wŏ zài wàng xī zŏu yìdiăn. Wŭnòng zài yòubian, duì bu dui? dìyíge	Wŏ zài wàng xī zŏu yìdiăn. Yòubian dìyíge lùkŏu jiù shi Wŭnòng, duì bu dui?
6.	Wŏ zài wàng dōng zŏu yìdiăn. Qínòng zài zuŏbian, duì bu dui? dìsìge	Wŏ zài wàng dōng zŏu yìdiăn. Zuŏbian dìsìge lùkŏu jiù shi Qínòng, duì bu dui?
7.	Wŏ zài wàng qián zŏu yìdiăn. Liùnòng zài yòubian, duì bu dui? dìwŭge	Wŏ zài wàng qián zŏu yìdiăn. Yòubian dìwŭge lùkŏu jiù shi Liùnòng, duì bu dui?

G. Transformation Drill

1.	Speaker: Tā cóngqián zhù zai nèige hútong. (cue) nián (He used to live on that alley.)	You: Tā cóngqián zài nèige hútong zhùle jǐnián? (How many years did he live on that alley?)
2.	Wǒ fùqin cóngqián zhù zai Guānghuá Lù. nián	Nǐ fùqin cóngqián zài Guānghuá Lù zhùle jǐnián?
3.	Tā gēge shàngge yuè zhù zai nèige fàndiàn. tiān	Tā gēge shàngge yuè zài nèige fàndiàn zhùle jǐtiān?
4.	Tā jiějie qùnián zhù zài péngyou jiā. yuè	Tā jiějie qùnián zài péngyou jiā zhùle jǐge yuè?
5.	Wáng Tóngzhì cóngqián zhù zai zhèige hútong. nián	Wáng Tóngzhì cóngqián zài zhèige hútong zhùle jǐnián?
6.	Zhāng Tóngzhì qùnián zhù zai nèige hútong. yuè	Zhāng Tóngzhì qùnián zài nèige hútong zhùle jǐge yuè?
7.	Tāmen cóngqián zhù zai Sānlitún. nián	Tāmen cóngqián zài Sānlitún zhùle jǐnián?

H. Response Drill

1.	Speaker: Nǐ zhǎo shénme dìfang? (cue) Nánjīng Lù (What place are you looking for?)	You: Wǒ zhǎo Nánjīng Lù. (I'm looking for Nánjīng Road.)
2.	Nǐ zhǎo shénme lù? Zhōngshān Lù	Wǒ zhǎo Zhōngshān Lù.
3.	Nǐ zhǎo shénme? nèiběn shū	Wǒ zhǎo nèiběn shū.
4.	Nǐ zhǎo shéi? Wáng Xiānsheng	Wǒ zhǎo Wáng Xiānsheng.
5.	Nǐ zhǎo shénme dìfang? Wǔguānchù	Wǒ zhǎo Wǔguānchù.
6.	Nǐ zhǎo shéi? Hú Měilíng	Wǒ zhǎo Hú Měilíng.
7.	Nǐ zhǎo shénme? yìzhāng Táiběi dìtú	Wǒ zhǎo yìzhāng Táiběi dìtú.